

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES, ENGLISH AND FRENCH;

CONTAINING

- | | |
|--|--|
| I. All the FUNDAMENTAL
RULES of <i>French Construc-
tion</i> , digested and exempli-
fied, in a plain, easy, and
progressive Order. | III. FRENCH Exercises, with
<i>Directions</i> , serving to ex-
plain divers Particles and
Difficulties of the French
Language. |
| II. IDIOMATICAL Exercises,
on Subjects both <i>entertain-
ing</i> and <i>instructive</i> . | IV. SENTENCES, calculated
to point out some intricate
<i>Idioms</i> and <i>Gallicisms</i> . |

TO WHICH IS ADDED,
AN INTRODUCTION TO FRENCH POETRY.

By Mr. P O R N Y,
FRENCH-MASTER AT ETON-COLLEGE.

THE SEVENTH EDITION, CORRECTED.

L O N D O N :

Printed for G. G. J. and J. ROBINSON, in Paternoster-Row; and
F. WINGRAVE, Successor to Mr. NOURSE, in the Strand.

M.DCC.XCIII.



P R E F A C E.

NOTHING is a greater discouragement to persons desirous to attain a competent knowledge of the French Language, than their wanting some *plain and easy Rules* to direct and enable them to speak or write that Language, on all occasions, with accuracy.

It was this consideration which engaged me in the undertaking of this book; and whether I have been happy enough to succeed in my design of putting that *in a clearer light, and more regular order*, which has been already attempted by others, is left to the decision of the judicious Reader; the method which I have pursued, for the execution of it, is as follows:

FIRST, I have laid down the *whole Rule of Construction* in terms as intelligible as possible, and have afterwards illustrated it by an easy and concise Example, that it might be the better committed to Memory.

SECONDLY, Practical Phrases, wherein a severe brevity has been judged more necessary to be introduced than elegance of expression, are subjoined to each Example, by way of Exercise, to make the *young Tyro* understand the Rule well, and digest it thoroughly, before he passes to another.

P R E F A C E.

THIRDLY, Because, at the beginning, Learners cannot be supposed to have a perfect Grammar in their memories, next to the signification of words, the *Genders, Numbers, and respective Conjugations* are, when necessary, minutely specified; and, as an additional help, they will find at the end of the Introduction an *Alphabetical List of the French Irregular verbs*, contained in this elementary Book, with all their inflections.

FOURTHLY, I have annexed to the Construction of each Part of Speech a *Recapitulatory Exercise*, which, by serving as a practical Summary of the preceding Rules, will refresh the memory of young Beginners, and remind them of those they might have forgotten.

FIFTHLY, Thinking it necessary, that through the whole *no Rules should be anticipated*, I have often inserted the right signification, with the grammatical Accidents, of one or more words used together, rather than expose Learners to err in a bad choice, or put them upon the Practice of a Rule they have not yet arrived at.

THUS led gradually, as it were by the hand, from *known Parts to those that are unknown*, they will, I hope, proceed in their Compositions with profit and chearfulness, having nothing to encounter with but what they have both Rule and Example for, to work by, before their Eyes.

THE

T H E
C O N T E N T S.

P A R T I.

G RAMMATICAL Introduction	—	page i
<i>Models of the Declension of Substantives</i>	—	ii
<i>Display of the Numeral Adjectives</i>	—	iv
<i>Methodical exposition of the French Pronouns</i>	—	vi
<i>Concise distribution of the Regular Verbs</i>	—	viii
<i>Remarks on the Use of Reflective Verbs</i>	—	x
<i>Alphabetical List of the Irregular Verbs</i>	—	xi
<i>Explanation of the different Particles</i>	—	xxxvii
<i>Rules for the Construction of Articles</i>	—	I
<i>The Definite Article</i>	— —	2
<i>The Indefinite Article</i>	— —	3
<i>The Partitive Article</i>	— —	ib.
<i>Remarks on the preceding Articles</i>	—	5
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	7
<i>Rules for the Construction of Substantives</i>	—	8
<i>Substantives denoting Commodity, &c.</i>	—	ib.
<i>Substantives denoting Titles, &c.</i>	—	9
<i>Substantives denoting Measures, &c.</i>	—	ib.
<i>Proper names of Persons, Countries, &c.</i>	—	10
<i>Remarks on the Use of several Substantives</i>	—	11
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	12

C O N T E N T S.

<i>Rules for the Construction of Adjectives</i>	—	p. 13
<i>Verbal Adjectives, &c.</i>	—	14
<i>The Adjective New</i>	—	15
<i>The Adjective Dear</i>	—	16
<i>Adjectives of Number and Order</i>	—	17
<i>The Government of Adjectives</i>	—	18
<i>The Comparison of Adjectives</i>	—	19
<i>Remarks on the Use of peculiar Adjectives</i>	—	20
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	22
<i>Rules for the Construction of Pronouns</i>	—	23
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	—	ib.
<i>Conjunctive Pronouns</i>	—	26
<i>Possessive Pronouns</i>	—	30
<i>Absolute Pronouns</i>	—	33
<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i>	—	35
<i>Relative Pronouns</i>	—	38
<i>Remarks on the Use of some Indefinite Pronouns</i>	—	42
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	43
<i>Rules for the Construction of French Verbs</i>	—	44
<i>Verbs used Interrogatively</i>	—	48
<i>Verbs used Negatively</i>	—	50
<i>Reflective Verbs</i>	—	53
<i>The Infinitive Mood</i>	—	57
<i>The Participle Present</i>	—	62
<i>The Participle Preterite</i>	—	64
<i>The Indicative Mood</i>	—	67
<i>The Subjunctive Mood</i>	—	70
<i>The Imperative Mood</i>	—	73
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	74

C O N T E N T S.

<i>Rules for the Government of Verbs</i>	—	—	p. 75
<i>The Different States required after them</i>	—	—	76
<i>Remarks on the peculiar government of Verbs</i>	—	—	80
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	—	81
<i>Rules for the Construction of Impersonal Verbs</i>	—	—	82
<i>Their general and particular significations</i>	—	—	83
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	—	86
<i>Rules for the Construction of Particles</i>	—	—	87
<i>Adverbial Particles</i>	—	—	88
<i>Prepositive Particles</i>	—	—	89
<i>Conjunctive Particles</i>	—	—	93
<i>Interjective Particles</i>	—	—	98
<i>Recapitulatory Exercise on the same Rules</i>	—	—	99

P A R T II.

<i>Directions for translating Idiomatical expressions, with such</i>			
<i>Remarks, as should be previously read by Learners,</i>			100
<i>On Knowledge</i>	—	—	102
<i>On Languages</i>	—	—	103
<i>On Geography</i>	—	—	104
<i>On Politeness</i>	—	—	105
<i>On Discretion</i>	—	—	106
<i>On Temperance</i>	—	—	107
<i>On Indolence</i>	—	—	108
<i>On Gaming</i>	—	—	109
<i>Character of a Rich Man</i>	—	—	110
<i>Character of a Poor Man</i>	—	—	111
<i>Character of a Good Man</i>	—	—	112
<i>Vain Hope frustrated</i>	—	—	113

C O N T E N T S.

P A R T III.

<i>French and English Exercises</i>	—	—	p. 116
<i>The Use and Signification of On</i>	—	—	117
<i>Of the Particle Que</i>	—	—	119
<i>Of the Particle Y</i>	—	—	121
<i>Of the Particle En</i>	—	—	123
<i>Of the Particular use of Le and Ne</i>			124
<i>Of the Impersonal Verb Il y à</i>	—	—	126
<i>Of the Impersonal Verb Il faut</i>	—	—	129
<i>Of the Impersonal Verb Il fait</i>	—	—	133

P A R T IV.

<i>Various FRENCH IDIOMS alphabetically displayed</i>			134
<i>The following GALLICISMS exemplified</i>	—	—	146
<i>D'aujourd'hui en huit</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>Avoir la bonté de</i>	—	—	147
<i>Aimer mieux</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>Avoir mal à &c.</i>	—	—	148
<i>C'en est fait de moi</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>Demeurer en repos</i>	—	—	149
<i>Il ne faut pas s'étonner</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>Je souhaiterois pouvoir</i>	—	—	150
<i>Il ne tient qu'à vous de</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>Il me tarde de</i>	—	—	151
<i>Trouver à redire à &c.</i>	—	—	ib.
<i>S'en prendre à &c.</i>	—	—	152
<i>Tout malade qu'il est</i>	—	—	153
<i>INTRODUCTION to FRENCH VERSIFICATION</i>			154

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION.

There are six different sorts of Words usually reckoned in Modern Languages, distinguished by the Names of

ARTICLES, SUBSTANTIVES, ADJECTIVES,
PRONOUNS, VERBS, and PARTICLES.

ARTICLES are *Definite*, *Indefinite*, or *Partitive*. The *definite* Article is that which has a particular and determined signification; as, (the) *le, la, &c.*

The *indefinite* Article has a vague Sense, and means *one*. with some reference to more; as, (a) *un, &c.*

The *partitive* Article expresses a part or portion of any whole substance or species; as, (some) *du, de la, &c.*

Examples shewing their various significations in French.

EXAMPLE I. Of the *Definite* ARTICLE.

Singular Number.				Plural Number.	
		M.	F.	*	C.
of or from }		the,	<i>le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l'</i>
		the,	<i>du, de la,</i>	<i>de l'</i>	
		to the,	<i>au, à la,</i>	<i>à l'</i>	
					the
					<i>les, ames</i>
					of or
					from }
					the
					<i>des,</i>
					to the
					<i>aux.</i>

EXAMPLE II.

Of the *Indefinite* Article.

		M.	F.	*
of or from }		a,	<i>un,</i>	<i>une.</i>
		a,	<i>d'un, d'une.</i>	
		to a,	<i>à un, à une.</i>	

EXAMPLE III.

Of the *Partitive* Article.

		M.	F.	*
of or from }		some,	<i>du, de la,</i>	<i>de l'.</i>
		to some,	<i>à du, à de la,</i>	<i>à de l'.</i>
		some,	(plural)	<i>des, C.</i>

* These Articles are to be used in the Singular before *Substantives* and *Adjectives* beginning with a *Vowel* or an *b* not aspirated.

SUBSTANTIVES are *Common*, *Abstract* or *Proper*.

The *Common* are such as are applicable and common to all objects of the same kind; as *King*, *Queen*, *Man*, *Woman*, *House*, *Town*, &c.

The *Abstract* are only the objects of the Understanding, being not perceptible by the Senses; as *Hope*, *Faith*, *Love*, *Goodness*, *Vice*, &c.

The *Proper* serve to distinguish the name of some particular person, place or thing; as, *George*, *Thomas*; *London*, *York*; *January*, *February*, &c.

The subsequent Examples will shew how to decline them *.

EXAMPLE I.

Of a Substantive declined with the *Definite Article*.

Singular.		Plural.	
of or from }	the King, <i>le Roi</i> ;	of or from }	the Kings, <i>les Rois</i> .
	the King, <i>du Roi</i> ;		the Kings, <i>des Rois</i> .
	to the King, <i>au Roi</i> ;		to the Kings, <i>aux Rois</i> .

EXAMPLE II.

With the *indefinite Article*.
Singular.

of or from }	a Queen, <i>une Reine</i> .
	a Queen, <i>d'une Reine</i> .
	to a Queen, <i>à une Reine</i> .

EXAMPLE III.

With the *partitive Article*.
Singular and Plural.

Some Paper, <i>du Papier</i> , m.
Some Wax, <i>de la Cire</i> , f.
Some Pens, <i>des Plumes</i> , c.

EXAMPLE IV.

Of *proper Substantives* with *prepositive Particles*.

of or from }	George, <i>George</i> .	of or from }	Amelia, <i>Amélie</i> .
	George, <i>de George</i> .		Amelia, <i>d'Amélie</i> .
	to George, <i>à George</i> .		to Amelia, <i>à Amélie</i> .

* The several circumstances of English and French Substantives are denoted by Articles or Particles, and not by *Cases* as in Latin.

ADJECTIVES are so called from their being *added* to Substantives, and serve to express the Quality, Form, Colour, or any other Accident of the Substantives to which they refer, as *good, young, old, &c.*

Without a Substantive they can neither make a full sense, nor convey a proper idea to the mind; but, being joined to a Substantive, they are perfectly understood.

The following Examples will sufficiently illustrate this.

E X A M P L E I.

Singular Number, Masculine.

	the good Man,	<i>le bon Homme.</i>
of or } from	the good Man,	<i>du bon Homme.</i>
	to the good Man,	<i>au bon Homme.</i>

E X A M P L E II.

Singular Number, Feminine.

	the good Woman,	<i>la bonne Femme.</i>
of or } from	the good Woman,	<i>de la bonne Femme.</i>
	to the good Woman,	<i>à la bonne Femme.</i>

E X A M P L E III.

An Adjective common to both Genders.

	a young Lad,	<i>un jeune Garçon.</i>
of or } from	a young Lad,	<i>d'un jeune Garçon.</i>
	to a young Lad,	<i>à un jeune Garçon.</i>

Observe that the signification of Adjectives is encreased or lessened, when different participations of a Quality, Form, Colour, &c, are compared together; hence arise what is generally called the *Degrees of Comparison* *, viz. the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

* These Degrees are generally formed in French by prefixing *plus* (more) or *le plus m, la plus f, &c.* to the Positive; see page 19.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES serve to indicate Objects either by their *Number*, or in assigning their *Order*; hence they are divided into *Adjectives of Number* and *Adjectives of Order*; those of Number are these, viz.

1	<i>Un m, une f.</i>	40	<i>Quarante,</i>
2	<i>Deux,</i>	41	<i>quarante-et-un,</i>
3	<i>Trois,</i>	42	<i>quarante-deux,</i>
4	<i>Quatre,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
5	<i>Cinq,</i>	50	<i>Cinquante,</i>
6	<i>Six,</i>	51	<i>cinquante-et-un,</i>
7	<i>Sept,</i>	52	<i>cinquante-deux,</i>
8	<i>Huit,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
9	<i>Neuf,</i>	60	<i>Soixante,</i>
10	<i>Dix,</i>	61	<i>soixante et-un,</i>
11	<i>Onze,</i>	62	<i>soixante-deux,</i>
12	<i>Douze,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
13	<i>Treize,</i>	70	<i>Soixante-dix,</i>
14	<i>Quatorze,</i>	71	<i>soixante-onze,</i>
15	<i>Quinze,</i>	72	<i>soixante-douze,</i>
16	<i>Seize,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
17	<i>Dix sept,</i>	80	<i>Quatre-vingt,</i>
18	<i>Dix-huit,</i>	81	<i>quatre-vingt-un,</i>
19	<i>Dix-neuf,</i>	82	<i>quatre-vingt-deux.</i>
20	<i>Vingt,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
21	<i>vingt-et-un,</i>	90	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix.</i>
22	<i>vingt-deux,</i>	91	<i>quatre-vingt-onze,</i>
23	<i>vingt-trois,</i>	92	<i>quatre-vingt-douze.</i>
24	<i>vingt quatre,</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
&c.	<i>&c.</i>	100	<i>Cent,</i>
30	<i>Trente,</i>	101	<i>cent-un, &c.</i>
31	<i>trente-et-un,</i>	500	<i>cinq-cents,</i>
32, &c.	<i>trente-deux, &c.</i>	1000	<i>Mille*.</i>

* This word is, from an old established custom, to be contracted into *mil*, in writing the Date of the Year; Exam. 1793, write *Mil sept cent quatre-vingt-trois*; and not *Un mil, &c.* as in English.

ADJECTIVES of ORDER usually have the Definite Article prefixed to them, which, in French, must agree with the Gender and Number of the Substantive to which they belong; they are as follows, viz.

I.	<i>Premier m, e f.</i>	XL.	<i>Quarantième.</i>
II.	<i>Second m, e f.</i>	XLI.	<i>quarante-et-unième.</i>
III.	<i>Troisième*.</i>	XLII.	<i>quarante-deuxième.</i>
IV.	<i>Quatrième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
V.	<i>Cinquième.</i>	L.	<i>Cinquantième.</i>
VI.	<i>Sixième.</i>	LI.	<i>cinquante-et-unième.</i>
VII.	<i>Septième.</i>	LII.	<i>cinquante-deuxième.</i>
VIII.	<i>Huitième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
IX.	<i>Neuvième.</i>	LX.	<i>Soixantième.</i>
X.	<i>Dixième.</i>	LXI.	<i>soixante-et-unième.</i>
XI.	<i>Onzième.</i>	LXII.	<i>soixante-deuxième.</i>
XII.	<i>Douzième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
XIII.	<i>Treizième.</i>	LXX.	<i>Soixante-dixième.</i>
XIV.	<i>Quatorzième.</i>	LXXI.	<i>soixante-onzième.</i>
XV.	<i>Quinzième.</i>	LXXII.	<i>soixante-douzième.</i>
XVI.	<i>Seizième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
XVII.	<i>Dix-septième.</i>	LXXX.	<i>Quatre-vingtième.</i>
XVIII.	<i>Dix-huitième.</i>	LXXXI.	<i>quatre-vingt-unième.</i>
XIX.	<i>Dix-neuvième.</i>	LXXXII.	<i>quatre-vingt-deuxième.</i>
XX.	<i>Vingtième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
XXI.	<i>vingt-et-unième.</i>	XC.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dixième.</i>
XXII.	<i>vingt-deuxième.</i>	XCI.	<i>quatre-vingt-onzième.</i>
XXIII.	<i>vingt-troisième.</i>	XCII.	<i>quatre-vingt-douzième.</i>
XXIV.	<i>vingt-quatrième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
XXV.	<i>vingt-cinquième.</i>	C.	<i>Centième.</i>
XXVI.	<i>vingt-sixième.</i>	CI.	<i>cent-unième.</i>
&c.	<i>Éc.</i>	CII.	<i>cent-deuxième.</i>
XXX.	<i>Trentième.</i>	CIII.	<i>cent-troisième.</i>
XXXI.	<i>trente-et-unième.</i>	&c.	<i>Éc.</i>
XXXII.	<i>&c. trente-deuxième.</i>	M.	<i>Millième.</i>

* This and the following Adjectives are formed by adding *ième* to the last consonant of the preceding Numbers; as *trois* makes *troisième*, &c. except *neuvième*, wherein the final *f* of *nuf* is changed into *v*.

PRONOUNS are Parts of Speech, used to supply the place of *Names* of Men, Women, and Things, to avoid their being repeated; every time there is occasion to speak of them; see the Practical Grammar, page 79.

In the following classes, each sort is fully particularised.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
	I, - - <i>je.</i>		We, - - <i>nous.</i>
	thou, - <i>tu.</i>		ye or you *, <i>vous.</i>
it	{ he, - - <i>il.</i>		{ <i>ils, m.</i>
	{ she, - <i>elle.</i>		
			they, - { <i>elles, f.</i>

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
	me, - <i>moi or me.</i>		us, - - - <i>nous.</i>
	thee, - <i>toi or te.</i>		ye, or you *, <i>vous.</i>
it	{ him, - <i>le, m. elle, la, f.</i>		{ <i>eux, m. elles, f.</i>
	{ her, - <i>lui, se, soi, c.</i>		
			them, { <i>leur, se, les, c.</i>

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.	
	my, <i>mon, m. ma, f.</i>		my, - - <i>mes, c.</i>
	thy, <i>ton, m. ta, f.</i>		thy, - - <i>tes, c.</i>
its	{ his, - - <i>son, m.</i>		{ <i>ses, c.</i>
	{ her, - - <i>sa, f.</i>		
	our, - - <i>notre, c.</i>		our, - - <i>nos, c.</i>
	your, - - <i>votre, c.</i>		your, - - <i>vos, c.</i>
	their, - <i>leur, c.</i>		their, - - <i>leurs, c.</i>

* This Pronoun (you, as well as *vous*) is through custom, which gives law to Grammar, used either for the Plural or Singular Number.

ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

Singular.			Plural.		
mine, -	{	<i>le mien, m.</i> <i>la mienne, f.</i>	mine, -	{	<i>les miens, m.</i> <i>les miennes, f.</i>
thine, -	{	<i>le tien, m.</i> <i>la tienne, f.</i>	thine, -	{	<i>les tiens, m.</i> <i>les tiennes, f.</i>
his or hers,	{	<i>le sien, m.</i> <i>la sienne, f.</i>	his or hers,	{	<i>les siens, m.</i> <i>les siennes, f.</i>
ours, <i>le nôtre, m. la nôtre, f.</i>			ours, -		<i>les nôtres, c.</i>
yours, <i>le vôtre, m. la vôtre, f.</i>			yours, -		<i>les vôtres, c.</i>
theirs, <i>le leur, m. la leur, f.</i>			theirs, -		<i>les leurs, c.</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.			Plural.		
this, that,	{	<i>ce & cet, m. cette, f.</i>	these, those,	{	<i>ces, c. ceux, m. celles, f.</i>
this, -	{	<i>celui-ci, m.</i> <i>celle-ci, f.</i> <i>ce-ci, c.</i>	these, -	{	<i>ceux-ci, m.</i> <i>celles-ci, f.</i>
that, -	{	<i>celui-là, m.</i> <i>celle-là, f.</i> <i>ce-là, c.</i>	those, -	{	<i>ceux-là, m.</i> <i>celles-là, f.</i>

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.				Plural.			
who, or that,	<i>qui,</i>	<i>c.</i>		who, or that,	<i>qui,</i>	<i>c.</i>	
whom, or that,	<i>que,</i>	<i>c.</i>		whom, or that,	<i>que,</i>	<i>c.</i>	
whose - -	<i>dont,</i>	<i>c.</i>		whose, - -	<i>dont,</i>	<i>c.</i>	
which, <i>lequel, m. laquelle, f.</i>				which, <i>lesquels, m. lesquelles, f.</i>			
what*, <i>quel, m. quelle, f.</i>				what, <i>quels, m. quelles, f.</i>			

* Besides the annexed signification of this Pronoun, it is also rendered by *que, quoi; ce qui, ce quoi, and ce dont; see its construction, p. 40, and 42.*

VERBS* are distributed into Moods, Tenses, and Numbers, called *Conjugation*, of which there are four sorts in French; but irregularities being found in some of them, we distinguish them by *Regular* and *Irregular* verbs.

Regular Verbs are conjugated after the following *Models*.

INFINIT.			PARTICIPLES.				
(1) <i>Donn - er</i>	<i>ant</i> ;	<i>é</i>	<i>m</i> ,	<i>ée</i>	<i>f</i> ,	<i>s</i>	<i>pl.</i>
(2) <i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>issant</i> ;	<i>i</i>	<i>m</i> ,	<i>ie</i>	<i>f</i> ,	<i>s</i>	<i>pl.</i>
(3) <i>Re-cevoir</i>	<i>cevant</i> ;	<i>çu</i>	<i>m</i> ,	<i>çue</i>	<i>f</i> ,	<i>s</i>	<i>pl.</i>
(4) <i>Vend - re</i>	<i>ant</i> ;	<i>u</i>	<i>m</i> ,	<i>ue</i>	<i>f</i> ,	<i>s</i>	<i>pl.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it;</i>	<i>issons,</i>	<i>issez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çois,</i>	<i>çois,</i>	<i>çoit;</i>	<i>cevons,</i>	<i>cevez,</i>	<i>çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>

Imperfect.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>oit;</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>issois,</i>	<i>issois,</i>	<i>issoit;</i>	<i>issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issoient.</i>
<i>Rece - voir</i>	<i>vois,</i>	<i>vois,</i>	<i>voit;</i>	<i>vions,</i>	<i>viez,</i>	<i>voient.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>oit;</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>

Preterite.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>ai,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>a ;</i>	<i>ames,</i>	<i>ates,</i>	<i>èrent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it ;</i>	<i>imes,</i>	<i>ites,</i>	<i>irent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çus,</i>	<i>çus,</i>	<i>çut ;</i>	<i>çumes,</i>	<i>çutes,</i>	<i>çurent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it ;</i>	<i>imes,</i>	<i>ites,</i>	<i>irent.</i>

* The etymology of this Part of Speech, and the distinctions it admits of are described in the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 48 and 92.

Future Tense.

INFINIT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>erai,</i>	<i>eras,</i>	<i>era;</i>	<i>erons,</i>	<i>erez,</i>	<i>eront.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>irai,</i>	<i>iras,</i>	<i>ira;</i>	<i>irons,</i>	<i>irez,</i>	<i>iront.</i>
<i>Rece - voir</i>	<i>vrai,</i>	<i>uras,</i>	<i>vra;</i>	<i>vrons,</i>	<i>vrez,</i>	<i>vront.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>rai,</i>	<i>ras,</i>	<i>ra;</i>	<i>rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>isse,</i>	<i>isses,</i>	<i>isse;</i>	<i>issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çoive,</i>	<i>çoives,</i>	<i>çoive;</i>	<i>cevions,</i>	<i>ceviez,</i>	<i>çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>

Imperfect.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>erois,</i>	<i>erois,</i>	<i>eroit;</i>	<i>erions,</i>	<i>eriez,</i>	<i>eroient.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>irois,</i>	<i>irois,</i>	<i>iroit;</i>	<i>irions,</i>	<i>iriez,</i>	<i>iroient.</i>
<i>Rece - voir</i>	<i>vrais,</i>	<i>vrais,</i>	<i>vrait;</i>	<i>vrions,</i>	<i>vrriez,</i>	<i>vraient.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>rois,</i>	<i>rois,</i>	<i>roit;</i>	<i>rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>roient.</i>

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn - er</i>	<i>asse,</i>	<i>asses,</i>	<i>ât;</i>	<i>assions,</i>	<i>assiez,</i>	<i>assent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	<i>isse,</i>	<i>isses,</i>	<i>ît;</i>	<i>issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	<i>çusse,</i>	<i>çusses,</i>	<i>çût;</i>	<i>çussions,</i>	<i>çussiez,</i>	<i>çussent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	<i>isse,</i>	<i>isses,</i>	<i>ît;</i>	<i>issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Donn - er</i>	—	<i>e*,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Pun - ir</i>	—	<i>is</i>	<i>isse;</i>	<i>issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Re - cevoir</i>	—	<i>çois,</i>	<i>çoive;</i>	<i>cevons,</i>	<i>cevez,</i>	<i>çoivent.</i>
<i>Vend - re</i>	—	<i>s,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>

* To this Termination must be added an *s*, when it is followed by either of the Particles *y* or *en*: Exam. *donnes-y*; — *donnes-en*, &c.

Besides the foregoing method of conjugating Verbs, there is another, which is used to express an *action* returning upon the *agent* that produces it; as, *se blesser*, to hurt one's self; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; &c. Verbs thus conjugated are called *Reflective Verbs**. It must be observed, that they do not form their *Compound-tenses* in French with *Avoir*, but with the verb *Etre*; Exam.

INFINIT. to Rise, *se Lever*, *se levant*; *levé m. e f.*

INDICATIVE, 1. Affirmatively.

Singular. *Je me lève, tu te lèves, il se lève*;

Plural. *Nous nous levons, vous vous levez, ils se lèvent.*

2. Interrogatively.

Me levé-je, te lèves-tu, se lève-t-il?

Nous levons-nous, vous levez-vous, se lèvent-ils?

3. Negatively.

Je ne me lève pas, tu ne te lèves pas, &c.

Nous ne nous levons pas, vous ne vous levez pas, &c.

4. Interrogatively and Negatively.

Ne me levé-je-pas, ne te lèves-tu pas, &c.

Ne nous levons-nous pas, ne vous levez-vous pas, &c.

COMPOUND-TENSES.

1. *Je me suis levé, tu t'es levé, il s'est levé, &c.*

2. *Me suis-je levé, t'es-tu levé, s'est-il levé? &c.*

3. *Je ne me suis-pas levé, tu ne t'es pas levé, &c.*

4. *Ne me suis-je pas levé, ne t'es-tu pas levé, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

Affirm. *Lève-toi, qu'il se lève m, qu'elle se lève f.*

Levons-nous, levez-vous, qu'ils se lèvent m, &c.

Negat. *Ne te lève pas, qu'il ne se lève pas, &c.*

Ne nous levons pas, ne vous levez pas, &c.

* We have another sort of Verbs called *Reciprocal*, which are also conjugated with two Pronouns; but they are only used in the Plural Number; as *Nous nous entraînons*, &c. see the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 121.

ALPHABETICAL LIST

OF

The French irregular Verbs contained in this Book.

THE irregularities of these Verbs fall chiefly upon either the Present, Preterite, or Future Tenses; and as their Conjugations appear to Learners so intricate that they seldom acquire them by memory, I have inserted, in an alphabetical order, those Primitive as well as Derivative Verbs that are dispersed through the different Exercises of this book, that they may be found out, with greater readiness, when they have occasion for any of them.

A C Q

Abattre.	(4 ir.)	to Pull down;	see—Battre.
Abfoudre,	(4 ir.)	to Absolve;	see—Réfoudre.
Abstenir,	(2 ir.)	to Abstain;	see—Tenir.
Accourir,	(2 ir.)	to Run to;	see—Courir.
Accueillir,	(2 ir.)	to Welcome;	see—Cueillir.
Acquérir*,	(2 ir.)	to Acquire;	acquérant, acquis <i>m, e f.</i>

INDICAT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Acqu-iers, iers, iert;	Acqu-érons, érez, ièrent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Acquér-ois, ois, oit;	Acquér-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Acqu-is, is, it;	Acqu-imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Acquer-rai, ras, ra;	Acquer-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Acqu-iére, ières, iére;	Acqu-érions, eriez, ièrent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Acquer-rois, rois, roit;	Acquer-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Acqu-isse, isses, ît;	Acquis-sions, siez, sent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Acqu-iers, iére;	Acqu-érons, érez, ièrent.

* Authors are divided about the spelling of this word; *Danet* and others, who closely adhere to the Etymology of words, write it with a C; but several Writers of repute, as *Richalet*, &c. use no C in it.

Admettre, (4 ir.) *to Admit*; see—Mettre.

Aller *, (1 ir.) *to Go*, allant, allé *m.* allée *f.*

INDICAT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Vais, vas, va;	Allons, allez, vont.
<i>Imp.</i>	All-ois, ois, oit;	All-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	All-ai, as, a;	All-ames, ates, èrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ir-ai, as, a;	Ir-ons, ez, ont.

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Aill-e, es, e;	Allions, alliez, aillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ir-ois, ois, oit;	Ir-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	All-asse, asses, ât;	All-affions, affiez, affent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Va, aille;	Allons, allez, aillent.

Apartenir, (2 ir) *to Belong*; see—Tenir.
 Apprendre, (4 ir) *to Learn*; see—Prendre.
 Assaillir, (2 ir) *to Assault*; see—Tressaillir.
 Assoir, (3 ir) *to Sit down*, Asséyant, assis *m.* assise *f.*

INDICAT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Ass-ieds, ieds, ied;	éyons, éyez, èyent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Asséy-ois, ois, oit;	ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ass-is, is, it;	imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Assié-rai, ras, ra;	rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i>	Asséy-e, es, e;	ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Assié-rois, rois, roit;	ions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ass-isse, isses, ît;	issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Ass-ieds, éye;	Asséy-ons, ez, ent.

* When this is used as a Reflective verb, it makes *s'en aller* (*to Go away*) and is conjugated like Verbs of that kind; except in the Imperative mood; see the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 127.

Affoir is also used for Affeoir; see the Gram. p. 144.

Astreindre, (4 ir) to Restrain—The conjugation of this verb is formed, like that of the verb Craindre.

Atteindre, (4 ir) to Reach; see—Ceindre.

Avoir, (3 ir) to Have, ayant, eu m, eue, f.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Ai,</i>	<i>as, a;</i>	<i>Avons,</i>	<i>avez,</i>	<i>ont.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Av-ois,</i>	<i>ois, oit;</i>	<i>Av-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Eus,</i>	<i>eus, eut;</i>	<i>Eu-mes,</i>	<i>tes,</i>	<i>rent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Au-rai,</i>	<i>ras, ra;</i>	<i>Aurons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront.</i>

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Aie,</i>	<i>aies, ait;</i>	<i>Ay-ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>Aient.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Aur-ois,</i>	<i>ois, oit;</i>	<i>Aur-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Eusse,</i>	<i>euses, eût;</i>	<i>Eus-sions,</i>	<i>fiez,</i>	<i>sent.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>—Aie,</i>	<i>ait;</i>	<i>Ay-ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>Aient.</i>

*Battre *, (4 ir) to Beat, battant, battu m, battue f.*

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Bat-s,</i>	<i>s, —;</i>	<i>Batt-ons,</i>	<i>tez,</i>	<i>tent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Batt-ois,</i>	<i>ois, oit;</i>	<i>Batt-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Batt-is,</i>	<i>is, it;</i>	<i>Batt-imes,</i>	<i>ites,</i>	<i>irent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Batt-rai,</i>	<i>ras, ra;</i>	<i>Batt-rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront.</i>

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Batt-e,</i>	<i>es, e;</i>	<i>Batt-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Batt-rois,</i>	<i>rois, roit;</i>	<i>Batt-rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>roient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Batt-isse,</i>	<i>isses,ût;</i>	<i>Batt-issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>—Bat-ε,</i>	<i>te;</i>	<i>Batt-ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>

* This Verb is variously written by different authors; *Danet*, and *Richelet*, use a *t* only as *batre*, and so on; *Dupuy*, and *Boudouin*, wrote it indiscriminately, but the present custom authorises this way.

Bénir (2 ir) *to Bless*, bénissant, bénit *m*, e *f*. *This verb is irregular only in the participle of the infinitive, when said of church ceremonies, see the Grammar, p. 130; in other cases it is conjugated like Punir, a regular verb.*

Boire (4 ir) *to Drink*, buvant, bu *m*, bue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Boi-s,	s, t ;	Buv-ons,	ez,	Boivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Buv-ois,	ois, oit ;	Buv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bu-s	s, t ;	Bu-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Boi-rai,	ras, ra ;	Boi-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Boi-ve,	ves, ve ;	Buv-ions,	iez,	Boivent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Boi-rois,	rois, roit ;	Boi-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	B-usse,	usses,ût ;	B-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Boi-s,	ve ;	Buv-ons,	ez,	Boivent.

Bouillir (2 ir) *to Boil*, bouillant, bouilli *m*, bouillie *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Bou-s,	s, t ;	illons,	illez,	illent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Bouill-ois,	ois, oit ;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bouill-is,	is, it ;	imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.*</i>	Bouilli-rai,	ras, ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Bouill-e,	es, e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Bouilli-rois,	rois, roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Bouill-isse,	isses, it ;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Bou-s,	ille ;	Bouill-ons,	ez,	ent.

* Ancient authors wrote the Future *bouilleraï*, &c. and the Imperfect of the Subjunctive *bouillerois*, &c. but I think the modern orthography preferable. The French Academy has not decided on either.

Ceindre, (4 ir) to Gird, ceignant, ceint *m*, *e f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Cein-s	s, t;	Ceign-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ceign-ois,	ois, oit;	Ceign-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ceign-is,	is, it;	Ceign-imes,	itez,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ceind-rai,	ras, ra;	Ceind-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ceign-e,	es, e;	Ceign-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ceind-rois,	rois, roit;	Ceind-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ceign-isse,	isses, ît;	Ceign-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Cei-ns, gne;		Ceign-ons,	ez,	ent.

Circon-cire, (4 ir) to Circumcise, cisant, cis *m*, cise *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Circonci-s,	s, t;	sons,	sez,	fent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Circoncif-ois,	ois, oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Circonc-is,	is, it;	imes,	itez,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Circonci-rai,	ras, ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Circoncif-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Circonci-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Circonc-ise,	isses, ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Circonc-is, ise;		Circoncif-ons,	ez,	ent.

Clorre *, (4 ir) to Close, closant, clos *m*, close *f*.
 Combattre, (4 ir) to Fight; see—Battre.
 Commettre, (4 ir) to Commit; see—Mettre.

* This verb is Defective and Irregular; no other inflections being allowed in it but these three persons of the Present, *je clos, tu clos, il clos*; and those of the Future, *je clorrai, tu clorras, il clorras*.

Comprendre, (4 ir) to *Comprehend*; see—*Prendre*.

Conclure, (4 ir) to *Conclude*, concl-uant, u m, ue f.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Conclu-s,	s,	t;		ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conclu-ois,	ois,	oit;		ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Concl-us,	us,	ut;		umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Conclu-rai,	ras,	ra;		rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Conclu-e,	es,	e;		ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conclu-rois,	rois,	roit;		rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Concl-usse,	usses,	ût;		ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Conclu-s, e;				Conclu-ons,	ez,	ent.

Concourir, (2 ir) to *Concur*; see—*Courir*.

Conduire, (4 ir) to *Conduct*, condui-fant, t m, te f.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Condui-s,	s,	t;		fons,	sez,	fent.
<i>Imp.</i> Conduif-ois,	ois,	oit;		ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conduif-is,	is,	ît;		imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Condui-rai,	ras,	ra;		rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Condui-fe,	ses,	se;		fions,	fiez,	fent.
<i>Imp.</i> Condui-rois,	rois,	roit;		rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Conduif-isse,	isses,	ît;		iffions,	iffiez,	iffent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Condui-s, se;				Condui-sons,	sez,	fent.

Confire *, (4 ir) to *Preserve*; see—*Circoncire*.

* This verb and its only derivative *Déconfire*, are conjugated, through all their tenses, like *Circoncire*, except the participle preterite, which makes *confit*, whereas *Circoncire* makes *circoncis*; see p. xv.

Conn-oître, (4 ir) *to Know*, conn-oissant, u *m*, ue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Connoi-s,	s, t;	ssions,	ssiez,	ssient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Connoiss-ois,	ois, oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Conn-us,	us, ut;	umes,	utez,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Connoit-rai,	ras, ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Connoiss-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Connoit-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Conn-ussé,	usses,ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussient.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Conn-ois, oisse; Connoiss-sons, sez, sent.					
Conquérir *, (2 ir) <i>to Conquer</i> ; see—Acquérir.					
Construire, (4 ir) <i>to Construe</i> ; see—Conduire.					
Contenir, (2 ir) <i>to Contain</i> ; see—Tenir.					
Convaincre, (4 ir) <i>to Convince</i> ; quant, cu <i>m</i> , cue <i>f</i> .					

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Convaincs,	cs, t;	quons,	quez,	quent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Convainqu-ois,	ois, oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Convainqu-is,	is, it;	imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Convainc-rai,	ras, ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Convainqu-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Convainc-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Convainqu-isse,	isses,ût;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Convaincs, que; Convainqu-ons, ez, ent.					
Convenir, (2 ir) <i>to Agree</i> , &c.			see—Venir.		
Corrompre, (4 ir) <i>to Corrupt</i> ;			see—Rompre.		

* This verb is used only in the Infinitive mood, and in the preterites of the Indicative and Subjunctive moods; and forms all its Compound-tenses, with either the auxiliary verb *Avoir* or *Etre*.

Coudre, (4 ir) *to Sow*, cou-fant, fu *m*, fue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Cou-ds,	ds, d ;	Cou-sons,	sez,	sent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Couf-ois,	ois, oit ;	Couf-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Couf-us,	us, ut* ;	Couf-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Coud-rai,	ras, ra ;	Coud-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Couf-e,	es, e ;	Couf-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Coud-rois,	rois, roit ;	Coud-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Couf-usse,	usses, ût ;	Couf-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Cou-s, se ;		Couf-ons,	ez,	ent.

Courir, (2 ir) *to Run*, cou-rant, ru *m*, rue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Cour-s,	s, t ;	Cour-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Cour-ois,	ois, oit ;	Cour-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Cour-us,	us, ut ;	Cour-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Cour-rai,	ras, ra ;	Cour-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Cour-e,	es, e ;	Cour-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Cour-rois,	rois, roit ;	Cour-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Cour-usse,	usses, ût ;	Cour-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Cour-s, e ;		Cour-ons,	ez,	ent.

Craindre, (4 ir) *to Fear*, crai-gnant, nt *m*, nte *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Crain-s,	s, t ;	Craign-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Craign-ois,	ois, oit ;	Craign-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Craign-is,	is, it ;	Craign-irres,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Craind-rai,	ras, ra ;	Craind-rons,	rez,	ront.

* Antient authors used to write *je coufis*, *tu coufis*, &c. and in the Preterite of the Subjunctive *je coufisse*, *tu coufisses*, &c. but modern writers have adopted *coufus* for the Indicative, and *coufusse* for the Subjunctive.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Craign-e, es, e; Craign-ions, icz, ent.

Imp. Craind-rois, rois, roit; Craind-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Craign-isse, isses, ît; Craignif-fions, siez, sent.

Imperat.—Crai-ns, gne; Craign-ions, iez, ent.

Croire (4 ir) to Believe cr-oyant, u m, ue f.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Cr-ois*, ois, oit; Cr-oyons, oyez, oient.

Imp. Croy-ois, ois, oit; Croy-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Cr-us, us, ut; Cr-umes, utes, urent.

Fut. Croi-rai, ras, ra; Croi-rions, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Cr-oie, oies, oie; Cr-oyions, oyiez, oient.

Imp. Croi-rois, rois, roit; Croi-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Cr-usse, usses, ût; Cr-ussions, ussiez, ussent.

Imperat.—Cr-ois, oie; Cro-yons, yez, ient.

Croître, (4 ir) to Grow; see—Connoître.—It may be observed that the Participle preterite of croître is formed like that of croire, and of course is cru m. and crue f.

Cueillir, (2 ir) to Gather, cueill-ant, i m, ie f.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Cueill-e, es, e; Cueill-ons, ez, ent.

Imp. Cueill-ois, ois, oit; Cueill-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Cueill-is, is, it; Cueill-imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Cueille-rai, ras, ra; Cueille-rions, rez, ront.

* The manner of pronouncing this word is by some articulated as if it was spelt *crai*, but this is considered, by the Learned, as an effeminate way; we should therefore say *je crois*, as we pronounce *je vois*.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Cueill-e,	es,	e;	ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Cueille-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Cueill-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Cueill-e,	e;		Cueill-ons, ez, ent.

Cuire,	(4 ir) to Cook;	see—Conduire.
Découvrir,	(2 ir) to Discover;	see—Offrir.
Décrire,	(4 ir) to Describe;	see—Ecrire.
Déduire,	(4 ir) to Deduce;	see—Conduire.
Défaire,	(4 ir) to Undo;	see—Faire.
Déplaire,	(4 ir) to Displease;	see—Plaire.
Détruire,	(4 ir) to Destroy;	see—Conduire.
Devenir,	(2 ir) to Become;	see—Venir.
Dire *,	(4 ir) to Say,	disant, dit <i>m</i> , dite <i>f</i> .

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Di-s,	s,	t;	Di-sons, tes, sent.
<i>Imp.</i> Dis-ois,	ois;	oit;	Dis-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Di-s,	s;	t;	Di-mes, tes, rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Di-rai,	ras;	ra;	Di-rions, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Dis-e,	es,	e;	Dis-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Di-rois,	roit,	roit;	Di-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> D-isse,	isses,	ît;	D-issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Di-s,	se;		Di-sons, tes, sent.
Disconvenir,	(2 ir) to Disagree;	see—Venir.	
Discourir,	(2 ir) to Discourse;	see—Courir.	
Disjoindre,	(4 ir) to Disjoint;	see—Joindre.	
Disparoître,	(4 ir) to Disappear;	see—Paroître.	

* The derivatives of this verb *Contredire*, *Interdire*, *Médire*, *Prédire*, &c. except *Redire*, make *dissez*, in the second person plural of the Present and Imperative, but *Redire* is conjugated like *Dire*.

Dormir. (2 ir) to Sleep, dormant, dormi.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Dor-s, s, t; Dor-mons, mez, ment.

Imp. Dorm-ois, ois, oit; Dorm-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Dorm-is, is, it; Dorm-imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Dorm-irai, iras, ira; Dorm-irons, irez, iront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Dorm-e, es, e; Dorm-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Dorm-irois, irois, iroit; Dorm-irions, iriez, iroient.

Pret. Dorm-isse, isses, ît; Dorm-issions, issiez, issent.

Imperat.—Dor-s, me; Dorm-ons, ez, ent.

Eclorre*, (4 ir) to Hatch; see—Clorre.

Ecrire, (4 ir) to Write, écrivaint, écrit *m*, écrite *f*.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Ecri-s, s, t; Ecri-vons, vez, vent.

Imp. Ecriv-ois, ois, oit; Ecriv-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. Ecriv-is, is, it; Ecriv-imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Ecri-rai, ras, ra; Ecri-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Pres. Ecriv-e, es, e; Ecriv-ions, iez, ent.

Imp. Ecri-rois, rois, roit; Ecri-rions, rez, roient.

Pret. Ecriv-isse, isses, ît; Ecriv-issions, issiez, issent.

Imperat.—Ecr-is, ive; Ecriv-ons, ez, ent.

Elire, (4 ir) to Elect; see—Lire.

Endormir, (2 ir) to Fall asleep; see—Dormir.

Enjoindre, (4 ir) to Enjoin; see—Joindre.

Entremettre, (4 ir) to Intermeddle; see—Mettre.

Entreprendre, (4 ir) to Undertake; see—Prendre.

* This verb is seldom used but in the same persons and tenses, as its primitive *Clorre* is; it has however all its Compound-tenses formed with either *avoir* or *être*: Exam. *J'ai éelos*, &c. *il est éelos*, &c.

Envoyer, (I ir) to *Send*, envoyant, envoyé *m, e f.*

This verb and its derivative Renvoyer, to send back, are regular through their conjugation, except in the future of the Indicative and the imperfect of the Subj. which are thus.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.		IMPERFECT SUBJUNCT.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'</i> enverrai, <i>Nous</i> enverrons.		enverrois, enverrions.	
<i>Tu</i> enverras, <i>Vous</i> enverrez.		enverrois, enverriez.	
<i>Il</i> enverra, <i>Ils</i> enverront.		enverroit, enverroient.	
Etre, (4 ir) to <i>Be</i> , étant, été.		(été is invariable).	

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Suis, es, est;	Sommes, êtes, font.
<i>Imp.</i> Et-ois, ois, oit;	Et-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Fus, fus, fut;	Fu-mes, tes, rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Se-rai, ras, ra;	Se-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> Sois, fois, soit;	Soyons, soyez, soient.
<i>Imp.</i> Ser-ois, ois, oit;	Ser-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Fusse, fusses, fût;	Fuss-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imperat.</i> — Sois, soit;	Syons, soyez, soient.

Exclure, (4 ir) to *Exclude*; see—Conclure.

Faire, (4 ir) to *Do or Make*, faisant*, fait *m, faite f.*

INDICAT.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Pres.</i> F-ais, ais, ait;	F-efons, aites, ont.
<i>Imp.</i> Fef-ois, ois, oit;	Fef-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> F-is, is, it;	Fi-mes, tes, rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Fe-rai, ras, ra;	Fe-rons, rez, ront.

* This Participle, the first person plural *faisons*, and the following Tenses *faisois*, *ferai*, and *ferois*, used to be spelt *faisant*, *faisons*, *faisois*, *fairai*, and *fairois*; but this Orthography is almost obsolete.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Faſſ-e,	es, e;	Faſſ-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fe-rois,	rois, roit;	Fe-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	F-iſſe,	iſſes, ît;	F-iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Fais, faſſe;		Fefons,	faites,	faſſent.

Faillir, (2 ir) to *Fail*; ſee—Trefſaillir.

Falloir*, (3 ir) to *Be needful*,—Fallu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Il faut.
Imp. Il falloit.
Pret. Il fallut.
Fut. Il faudra.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Il faille.
 Il faudroit.
 Il fallût.

Feindre, (4 ir) to *Feign*; ſee—Ceindre.
 Fuir, (2 ir) to *Run away*, fuyant, fui *m*, fuie *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Fu-is,	is, it;	Fu-yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fuy-ois,	ois, oit;	Fuy-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Fu-is,	is, it;	Fui-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Fui-rai,	ras, ra;	Fui-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Pres.</i>	Fuy-e,	es, e;	Fuy-ions,	iez,	Fuient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fui-rois,	rois, roit;	Fui-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Fu-iſſe,	iſſes, ît;	Fuiſſions,	fiez,	ſent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Fu-is, ye;		Fuy-ons,	ez,	Fuient.

The preterites of the Indicative and Subjunctive of this verb are very little uſed, and inſtead of je ſuis and je m'enſuis, we ſay, when the verb is neuter, je pris la fuite; and if it is active, j'évitai, from the verb Eviter, to Avoid or Shun.

* This verb wants the Participle preſent; and its Participle preterite *fallu*, is invariable; being an Imperſonal; there is but the third perſon of every Tenſe uſed. It has ne'er an Imperative-mood.

Haïr (2 ir) to *Hate*, haïssant, haï *m*, haïe *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	Haï-s,	s, t;	Haïss-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Haïss-ois,	ois, oit;	Haïss-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	*—	—	—	—	—
<i>Fut.</i>	Haï-rai,	ras, ra;	Haï-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	Haïss-e,	es, e;	Haïss-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Haï-rois,	rois, roit;	Haï-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	*—	—	—	—	—
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Ha-is, iſſe; Ha-iſſons, iſſez, iſſent.				
Induire,	(4 ir) to <i>Induce</i> ;	ſee—Conduire.			
Inſtruire,	(4 ir) to <i>Inſtruct</i> ;	ſee—Conduire.			
Interrompre,	(4 ir) to <i>Interrupt</i> ;	ſee—Rompre.			
Joindre,	(4 ir) to <i>Join</i> ;	ſee—Ceindre.			
Lire, (4 ir) to <i>Read</i> ,	liſant, lu <i>m</i> , lue <i>f</i> .				

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	L-is,	is, it;	L-iſons,	iſez,	iſent.
<i>Imp.</i>	L-iſ-ois,	ois, oit;	L-iſ-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Lu-s,	s, t;	Lu-mes,	tez,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Li-rai,	ras, ra;	Li-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	L-iſ-e,	es, e;	L-iſ-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Li-rois,	rois, oit;	Li-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	L-uſſe,	uſſes, ût;	L-uſſions,	uſſiez,	uſſent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Li-s, ſe;				
			L-iſ-ons,	ez,	ent.

* The Preterite, in either Mood, is ſeldom or never uſed; the three firſt perſons ſing. of the Indicat. and the ſecond of the Imperat. make one ſyllable each, and therefore are written with a common *i*.

MA

ME

xxx

Maintenir,	(2 ir)	to <i>Maintain</i> ;	see—Tenir.
Malfaire,	(4 ir)	to <i>Do wrong</i> ;	see—Faire.
Maudire*,	(4 ir)	to <i>Curse</i> ;	see—Médire.
Méconnoître,	(4 ir)	to <i>Mistake</i> ;	see—Connoître.
Médire,	(4 ir)	to <i>Slander</i> ;	mé-disant, dit <i>m</i> , dite <i>f</i> .

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Méd-is, is, it;	Méd-isons, izez, isent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Médif-ois, ois, oit;	Médif-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Méd-is, is, it;	Méd-imes, ites, irent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Médi-rai, ras, ra;	Médi-rons, rez, ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Méd-ise, ises, ise;	Médi-sions, fiez, sent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Médi-rois, rois, roit;	Médi-rions, riez, roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Méd-isse, isses, ît;	Médif-sions, fiez, sent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Méd-is, ise;	Méd-isons, izez, isent.	

Mentir, (2 ir) to *Lye*, mentant, menti.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Men-s, s, t;	Men-tons, tez, tent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Ment-ois, ois, oit;	Ment-ions, iez, oient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Ment-is, is, it;	Ment-imes, ites, irent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Menti-rai, ras, ra;	Menti-rons, rez, ront.	

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Ment-e, es, e;	Ment-ions, iez, ent.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Menti-rois, rois, roit;	Menti-rions, riez, roient.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Ment-isse, isses, ît;	Ment-issions, issiez, issent.	
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Men-s, te,	Ment-ons, ez, ent.	

* This Verb follows the conjugation of *Médire*, with this exception, that it doubles its *s* thro' the whole; Exam. *m.mudissant, m.mudissent, m.mudisse, m.mudisse, &c.* like those of the verb *Punir*, see p. viii.

Méprendre, (4 ir) to *Mistake*; see—Prendre.
Mettre, (4 ir) to *Put*; mettant, mis *m*, mise *f*.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Met-s,	s,	—;	Met-tons,	tez,	tent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mett-ois,	ois,	oit;	Met-tions,	tiez,	toient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Mi-s,	s,	t;	Mi-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mett-rai,	ras,	ra;	Mett-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Mett-e,	es,	e;	Mett-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mett-rois,	rois,	roit;	Mett-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	M-isse,	isses,	ît;	M-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Met-s,	te;		Mett-ons,	ez,	ent.

Mourir *, (2 ir) to *Die*, mourant, mort *m*, morte *f*.

INDICATIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Meur-s,	s,	t;	Mour-ons,	ez,	Meurent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mour-ois,	ois,	oit;	Mour-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Mour-us,	us,	ut;	Mour-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mour-rai,	ras,	ra;	Mour-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Meur-e,	es,	e;	Mour-ions,	ez,	Meurent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mour-rois,	rois,	roit;	Mour-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Mour-usse,	usses,	ût;	Mour-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Meur-s,	e;		Mour-ons,	ez,	Meurent.

* The inflections of this verb are like those of *Courir*, that of the Participle preterite excepted; and the alteration of *eu* into *ou* in the Present of the Indicative and Subjunctive; for we say, *je cours*, &c.

*Naître**, (4 ir) *to Be born*; *naissant, né m, née f.*

INDICATIVE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Nai-s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>t;</i>	<i>Naiss-ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Naiss-ois,</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>oit;</i>	<i>Naiss-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>oient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Naqu-is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it;</i>	<i>Naqu-imes,</i>	<i>ites,</i>	<i>irent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Naît-rai,</i>	<i>ras,</i>	<i>ra;</i>	<i>Naît-rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront.</i>

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Naiss-e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e;</i>	<i>Naiss-ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Naît-rois,</i>	<i>rois,</i>	<i>roit;</i>	<i>Naît-rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>roient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Naqu-isse,</i>	<i>isses,</i>	<i>ît;</i>	<i>Naqu-issions,</i>	<i>issiez,</i>	<i>issent.</i>
<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Nai-s,</i>	<i>fle;</i>		<i>Naiss-ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent.</i>

Nuire, (4 ir) *to Hurt*; see—*Conduire*. *Although this Verb is conjugated, through all its single Tenses, like Conduire, yet it takes no t, at the end of the Participle preterite, and makes only nui.—Its Compound-tenses are formed with the Auxiliary verb Avoir.*

Obtenir, (4 ir) *to Obtain*; see—*Tenir*.

Offrir, (4 ir) *to Offer*; *offrant, offert m, offerte f.*

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Off-re,</i>	<i>res,</i>	<i>re;</i>	<i>Off-rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>rent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Off-rois,</i>	<i>rois,</i>	<i>roit;</i>	<i>Off-rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>roient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>Off-ris,</i>	<i>ris,</i>	<i>rit;</i>	<i>Off-rimes,</i>	<i>rites,</i>	<i>rirent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Offri-rai,</i>	<i>ras,</i>	<i>ra;</i>	<i>Offri-rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront.</i>

* The only derivative this verb has is *Renaitre*; but, as it has no Participle preterite, and consequently can form no compound-tenses, in its stead we make use of *régénéré*, with the Auxiliary verb *Être*.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Off-re,	res, re;	Off-rions, riez, rent.
<i>Imp.</i> Offri-rois,	rois, roit;	Offri-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Off-risse,	risses, rît;	Off-rissions, rissiez, rissent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Off-re,	re;	Off-rons, rez, rent.

Ouvrir,	(2 ir) to Open;	see—Offrir.
Paroître,	(4 ir) to Appear;	see—Connoître.
Partir,	(2 ir) to Set out;	see—Mentir.
Permettre,	(4 ir) to Permit;	see—Mettre.
Plaindre,	(4 ir) to Complain;	see—Craindre.
Plaire,	(4 ir) to Please;	plaisant, plu.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Plais,	plais, plaît;	Plai-sons, fez, fent.
<i>Imp.</i> Plais-ois,	ois, oit;	Plai-sions, siez, soient.
<i>Pret.</i> Pl-us,	us, ut;	Pl-umes, utes, urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Plai rai,	ras, ra;	Plai-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Plais-e,	es, e;	Plaif-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Plai-rois,	rois, roit;	Plai-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Pl-usse,	usses, ût;	Pl-ussions, ussiez, ussient.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Plai-s,	se;	Plaif-ons, ez, ent.

Pouvoir, (2 ir) to Be able, pouvant, pu.

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> P-uis*,	eux, eut;	P-ouvons, ouvez, euvent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pouv-ois,	ois, oit;	Pouv-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Pu-s,	s, t;	Pu-mes, tes, rent.
<i>Fut.</i> Pour-rai,	ras, ra;	Pour-rons, rez, ront.

* We say both *je puis*, and *je peux*; but, to point out their precise difference, it would be necessary to enter into too minute a detail for an elementary book: this verb has ne'er an Imperative-mood.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Puiss-e,	es, e;	Puiss-ions, iez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pour-rois,	rois, roit;	Pour-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Puss-e,	es, pût;	Puss-ions, iez, ent.

Poursuivre, (4 ir) to Pursue :	see—Suivre.
Pourvoir, (3 ir) to Provide ;	see—Voir.
Prédire, (4 ir) to Foretell ;	see—Dire.
Prendre, (4 ir) to Take ;	prenant, pris <i>m</i> , prise <i>f</i> .

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Pren-ds,	ds, d;	Pren-ons, ez, nent.
<i>Imp.</i> Pren-ois,	ois, oit;	Pren-ions, iez, oient.
<i>Pret.</i> Pr-is,	is, it;	Pr-imes, ites, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Prend-rai,	ras, ra;	Prend-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i> Pren-ne,	nes, ne;	Pren-ions, iez, nent.
<i>Imp.</i> Prend-rois,	rois, roit;	Prend-rions, riez, roient.
<i>Pret.</i> Pr-isse,	isses,ût;	Pr-issions, issiez, issent.
<i>Imperat.</i> —Pren-s,	ne;	Pren-ons, ez, nent.

Prescrire, (4 ir) to Prescribe ;	see—Ecrire.
Prévaloir *, (3 ir) to Prevail ;	see—Valoir.
Prévenir, (2 ir) to Prevent ;	see—Venir.
Prévoir, (3 ir) to Foresee ;	see—Voir.
Produire, (4 ir) to Produce ;	see—Conduire.
Promettre, (4 ir) to Promise ;	see—Mettre.
Reconnoître, (4 ir) to Know again ;	see—Connoître.
Réduire, (4 ir) to Reduce ;	see—Conduire.
Remettre, (4 ir) to Replace ;	see—Mettre.
Reprendre, (4 ir) to Take again	see—Prendre.

* This however deviates from its primitive *Valoir*, both in the Imperative, and the present of the Subjunctive; for it makes *prévaille*, and no *prévuille*; its Compound-tenses are formed with *Avoir*.

Se Repentir, (2 ir) to *Repent*; fee—*Mentir*.
Requérir, (2 ir) to *Require*; fee—*Acquérir*.
Rés-oudre, (4 ir) to *Resolve*, olvant, olu *m*, olue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Rés-ous,	ous, out;	olvons,	olvez,	olvent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Réolv-ois,	ois, oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Réol-us,	us, ut;	umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Réfoud-rai,	ras, ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Réolv-e,	es, e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Réfoud-rois,	rois, roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Réol-usse,	usses,ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Réf-ous, olve;		Réolv-ons, ez, ent.		

Rire, (4 ir) to *Laugh*; riant, ri.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ri-s,	s, t;	Ri-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ri-ois,	ois, oit;	Ri-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Ri-s,	s, t;	Ri-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ri-rai,	ras, ra;	Ri-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Ri-e,	es, e;	Ri-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ri-rois,	rois, roit;	Ri-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	R-isse,	isses,ût;	R-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—R-is, ie;		Ri-ons, ez, ent.		

Rom-pre, (4 ir) to *Break*, pant, pu *m*, pue *f* *.

* This verb is conjugated, through all its Tenses, like the regular Verb *Vendre*, see p. viii. except in the third person singular Number of the Present-tense in the Indicative-mood, which makes *rompt*.

Satisfaire, (4 ir) *to Satisfy*; see—Faire.

Savoir. (3 ir) *to Know*; sachant, su *m*, sue *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	S-ais,	ais, ait;	S-avons,	avez,	avent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Sav-ois,	ois, oit;	Sav-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Su-s,	s, t;	Su-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Sau-rai,	ras, ra;	Sau-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	Sach-e,	es, e;	Sach-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Sau-rois,	rois, roit;	Sau-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Su-ſſe,	uſſes, ūt;	S-uſſions,	uſſiez,	uſſent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Sa-che, che;		Sach-ons,	ez,	ent.

Sentir, (2 ir) *to Smell*; see—Mentir.

Servir, (2 ir) *to Serve*; servant, servi *m*, servie *f*.

INDICAT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	Ser-s,	s, t;	Ser-vons,	vez,	vent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Serv-ois,	ois, oit;	Serv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Serv-is,	is, it;	Serv-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Servi-rai,	ras, ra;	Servi-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pref.</i>	Ser-ve,	ves, ve;	Serv-ions,	icz,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Servi-rois,	rois, roit;	Servi-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Serv-iſſe,	iſſes, ît;	Serv-iſſions,	iſſiez,	iſſent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Ser-s, ve;		Serv-vons,	vez,	vent.

Sortir, (2 ir) *to Go out*; see—Mentir.

Soudre, (4 ir) *to Solve*; This is a Defective verb *.

* This word (*soudre*) is only used as a dogmatical term; *Pascal*, and other celebrated Authors, have introduced its derivative *Répondre*, in its stead, which is in use, as may be seen, thro' all its Tenses.

Souffrir, (2 ir) *to Suffer*; souff-rant, *ert m, erte f.*

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Souff-re,	res,	re;	Souff-rons,	rez,	rent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Souff-rois,	rois,	roit;	Souff-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Souff-ris,	ris,	rit;	Souff-rimes,	rites,	rirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Souffri-rai,	ras,	ra;	Souffri-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Souff-re,	res,	re;	Souff-rions,	riez,	rent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Souffri-rois,	rois,	roit;	Souffri-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Souffri-isse,	isses,	ît;	Souffri-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Souff-res, re; Souff-rons, rez, rent.					

Se Souvenir, (2 ir) *to Remember*; *see—Venir.*

Suffire, (4 ir) *to Suffice*; *see—Circoncire.*

Suivre, (4 ir) *to Follow*; *sui-vant, vi m, vie f.*

INDICAT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Sui-s*,	s,	t;	Sui-vons,	vez,	vent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Suiv-ois,	ois,	oit;	Suiv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Suiv-is,	is,	it;	Suiv-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Suiv-rai,	ras,	ra;	Suiv-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Suiv-e,	es,	e;	Suiv-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Suiv-rois,	rois,	roit;	Suiv-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Suiv-isse,	isses,	ît;	Suiv-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Sui-s, ve; Suiv-ons, ez, ent.					

Surprendre, (4 ir) *to Surprise*; *see—Prendre.*

* The difference we make betwixt the pronunciation of this first Person, and that of the Verb *Etre*, viz. *je suis* (I am) is in pronouncing *je suis* (I follow) short; and that of the verb *Etre* long.

Se Taire, (4 ir) *to Be silent*; see—*Plaire*.

Teindre, (4 ir) *to Dye*; see—*Ceindre*.

Tenir, (2 ir) *to Hold*; *Tenant*, tenu *m*, tenue *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. T-iens, iens, ient; T-enons, enez, iennent.

Imp. Ten-ois, ois, oit; Ten-ions, icz, oient.

Pret. Tin-s, s, t; Tin-mes, tes, rent.

Fut. Tiend-rai, ras, ra; Tiend-rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Tien-ne, nes, ne; Ten-ions, icz, Tiennent.

Imp. Tiend-rois, rois, roit; Tiend-rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Tin-sse, sses, t; Tin-ssions, ssiez, ssient.

Imperat.—Tien-s, ne; Ten-ons, ez, Tiennent.

Traduire, (4 ir) *to Translate*; see—*Conduire*.

Transcrire, (4 ir) *to Transcribe*; see—*Ecrire*.

*Tressaillir**, (2 ir) *to Start up*; tressaill-ant, i *m*, ie *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Tressaill-e, es, e; ons, ez, ent.

Imp. Tressaill-ois, ois, oit; ions, icz, oient.

Pret. Tressaill-is, is, it; imes, ites, irent.

Fut. Tressailli-rai, ras, ra; rons, rez, ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. Tressaill-e, es, e; ions, icz, ent.

Imp. Tressailli-rois, rois, roit; rions, riez, roient.

Pret. Tressailli-sse, sses, t; ssions, ssiez, ssient.

Imperat.—Tressaill-es, e; ions, icz, ent.

* This Verb signifies likewise *to Leap for joy*, in which acceptance it is followed by *de joie* in French; as *Tressaillir de joie*, &c. But, these two Tenses, *Tressaillirai* and *Tressaillirois*, are seldom used.

Vaincre, (4 ir) to *Vanquish*; see—Convaincre.

Valoir, (3 ir) to *Be worth*; valant *, valu.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i>	V-aux,	aux,	aut;	Val-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Val-ois,	ois,	oit;	Val-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Val-lus,	us,	ut;	Val-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vaud-rai,	ras,	ra;	Vaud-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i>	V-aille,	ailles,	aille;	V-alions,	aliez,	aillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vaud-rois,	rois,	roit;	Vaud-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Val-usse,	usses,	ût;	Val-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—V-aus,	aille;	V-alons,	alez,	aillent.	

Venir, (2 ir) to *Come*; venant, venu *m*, venue *f*.

INDICAT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i>	V-iens,	iens,	ient;	V-enons,	enez,	iennent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ven-ois,	ois,	oit;	Ven-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Vin-s,	s,	t;	Vin-mes,	tes,	rent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Viend-rai,	ras,	ra;	Viend-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>Pres.</i>	Vien-ne,	nes,	ne;	Ven-ions,	iez,	Viennent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Viend-rois,	rois,	roit;	Viend-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Vin-ssé,	ssés,	t;	Vin-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Vien-s,	ne;	Ven-ons,	ez,	Viennent.	

Vêtir, (2 ir) to *Cloth*, vêtant, vêtu *m*, vêtue *f*.

* We also make use of *vaillant* conjointly with the verb *Avoir*, instead of *valant*, when we are speaking of the particular sum of money a Person is worth; Exam. *Il a vingt mille livres vaillant*; &c.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Vêt-s,	s,	—;	Vêt-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vêt-ois,	ois,	oit;	Vêt-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Vêt-is,	is,	it;	Vêt-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vêti-rai,	ras,	ra;	Vêti-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Vêt-e,	es,	e;	Vêt-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vêti-rois,	rois,	roit;	Vêti-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Vêt-isse,	isses,	ît;	Vêt-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Vêt-s,		e;	Vêt-ons,	ez,	ent.

Vivre, (4 ir) to Live; vivant, vécu.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Vi-s,	s,	t;	Viv-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Viv-ois,	ois,	oit;	Viv-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêc-us	us,	ut;	Vêc-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêqu-is,	is,	it;	Vêqu-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Viv-rai,	ras,	ra;	Viv-rons,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Viv-e,	es,	e;	Viv-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Viv-rois,	rois,	roit;	Viv-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêc-usse,	usses,	ût;	Vêc-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Pre*.</i>	Vêqu-isse,	isses,	ît;	Vêquif-sions,	siez,	sent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Vi-s,	ve;		Viv-ons,	ez,	ent.

* These two Preterites have each their Advocates, the members of the French Academy are for *vêcus* and *vêcussé*, and so is *Reflaut*; but *Richélet*, *Vaugelas*, *Danet*, and other Authors use the latter.

Voir, (3 ir) *to See*; voyant, vu *m*, vue *f*.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	V-ois,	ois,	oit;	V-oyons,	oyez,	oient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Voy-ois,	ois,	oit;	Voy-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	V-is,	is,	it;	V-imes,	ites,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ver-rai,	ras,	ra;	Ver-ront,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Voi-e,	es,	e;	V-oyions,	oyiez,	oient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ver-rois,	rois,	roit;	Ver-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	V-isse,	isses,	ît;	V-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imperat.</i>	—Voi-s,			e;	V-oyons,	oyez, oient.

Vouloir, (3 ir) *to Be willing*; voulant, voulu.

INDICAT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Veu-x,	x,	t;	Voul-ons,	ez,	Veulent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Voul-ois,	ois,	oit;	Voul-ions,	iez,	oient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Voul-us,	us,	ut;	Voul-umes,	utes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Voud-rai,	ras,	ra;	Voud-ront,	rez,	ront.

SUBJUNCT.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i>	Veull-e,	es,	e;	Vouli-ons,	ez,	Veullent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Voud-rois,	rois,	roit;	Voud-rions,	riez,	roient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Voul-usse,	usses,	ût;	Voul-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

This verb, like Pouvoir (to Be able), has ne'er an Imperative-Mood; because it would be no less ridiculous to bid one-self either to be willing, or to be able, than absurd to command others to be so; their Participle-preterite is also invariable.

PARTICLES make the sense of a Sentence more intelligible, by either expressing the circumstances of other words, or connecting them together; and these differ from the other Parts of Speech in this, that their termination is not susceptible of any change, but are to be used, without any variation, as they are found in the Dictionary.

They are generally distinguished by the following names of

I. ADVERBIAL,
II. PREPOSITIVE,

III. CONJUNCTIVE,
IV. INTERJECTIVE.

I. ADVERBIAL *particles* are so called, because they are generally joined to Verbs in order to explain their signification with more clearness, or denote some particular circumstances in regard either to the person that speaks, or the thing spoken of; Exam. Soon, *tôt*; late, *tard*; much, *beaucoup*; little, *peu*; quick, *vite*, &c.

II. PREPOSITIVE *particles* are those which always come before Substantives or Pronouns; from which they derive their name; Exam. *In* the house, *dans la maison*; *with* me, *avec moi*; *for* him, *pour lui*, &c.

III. CONJUNCTIVE *particles* serve to connect one Sentence with another, or any Part of Speech with another; they can be put also before Verbs; Exam. And, *et*; or, *ou*; but, *mais*; although, *quoique*; if, *si*; &c.

IV. INTERJECTIVE *particles* are words inserted into the Discourse, to express some sudden motion or passion of the soul; as, Alas, *hélas*; lack-a-day, *bon Dieu*; &c.

☞ Thus much I have thought necessary to prefix to these Exercises, for the use of those who are not acquainted with the Rudiments of the French Language.

E X P L A N A T I O N

Of the ABBREVIATIONS, &c. used in this Work.

m.	} stands for {	masculine.
f.		feminine.
c.		common.
sing.		singular.
plur.		plural.
i. e.		id est or viz.
(ir)		irregular.
(1)		1 conjugation.
(2)		2 conjugation.
(3)		3 conjugation.
(4)		4 conjugation.

The four last numerical figures denote the respective *Regular conjugations* the verbs, preceding them, belong to; Exam. *Devoir* (3) that is to indicate that *Devoir* is of the third Regular conjugation, and must have the inflections of its Moods and Tenses modelled on those of *Recevoir*, which are displayed in p. viii. When *ir* is annexed to any of these four numerical figures, as *lire* (4 ir) in p. 23, it is to denote that *lire* is an *irregular verb* of the fourth conjugation; and its inflections are to be looked for, by its two initial letters, in the Alphabetical list, which begins at p. xi.

* * The French under the English, thro' these Exercises, is the original word, as it would be found in a Dictionary, that is, without its grammatical accidents; except such Parts of Speech, or expressions, as are sometimes introduced before the Rules relating to their Construction, which are included between two perpendicular lines, and have their right signification expressed under them, as in the first line of the *Praxis* annexed to Rule II. p. 2; or in the last of that on Rule VII. p. 4.

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ARTICLES.

I. **F**RENCH Articles must be of the same Gender and Number, as the Substantives they have a reference to*.

E X A M P L E:

The father, the mother, and the children.

Le père, la mère, et les enfans.

P R A X I S.

To walk <i>Se promener</i> sun. <i>soleil m.</i>	in the yard. <i>dans cour f.</i>	To read a book. <i>lire livre m.</i>	To see the <i>voir</i>
To light the candles. <i>allumer chandelle f.</i>	To instruct a boy. <i>instruire garçon m.</i>		
To sing a song. <i>chanter chanson f.</i>	To speak to the maid. <i>parler servante f.</i>	To go <i>aller</i>	
to the park. <i>parc m.</i>	To observe the rules of the school, and <i>observer règle f. école f.</i>		
the eye of the master. <i>œil m. maître m.</i>	From the house to the church. <i>maison f. église f.</i>		

* Before the word *saint*, the feminine Article *la* is sometimes used, as in *la saint Pierre*, St. Peter's day; &c. but it is by abbreviation; for the words *fête de* are then understood: see the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 189.

THE CONSTRUCTION

II. *The Article is to be repeated in French, before all the Substantives of a sentence, although it be omitted in English;*

E X A M P L E:

The master, mistress, and servants are &c.

Le maître, la maîtresse, et les domestiques sont &c.

P R A X I S.

Bring a knife and fork; | go and fetch | the bread and
Aportez couteau m. fourchette f. allez chercher pain m.
 butter; | take away | the spoons and plates. The brewer
beurre m. otez cuiller f. assiette f. brasseur m.
 and baker are gone; the butcher and grocer are at the
boulangier m. partis boucher m. épicier m. à
 door. The king has rewarded the officers and soldiers.
porte f. roi m. récompensé officier m. soldat m.

III. *The Article definite, though not specified in English, must be used in French; first, before all Substantives taken in a general sense; secondly, before Adjectives used as Substantives;*

E X A M P L E:

Study makes men learned.

L'étude rend les hommes savans.

P R A X I S.

'To hate vice. To practise virtue. To learn French
haïr vice m. pratiquer vertu f. apprendre Français m.
 and Italian. Honor is due to kings and magistrates.
Italien honneur dû roi m. magistrat m.
 Black and red are more esteemed than yellow and grey.
noir m. rouge m. plus estimé que jaune m. gris m.

* This rule extends also to the names of arts and sciences, as *logic*, &c. virtues, vices, and games, as *wisdom*, *idleness*, &c. and several names of countries; see the Construction of Substantives, p. 10, R. VI.

IV. *Before parts of Measure, Weight and Number, the indefinite Article is rendered into French by the definite.*

E X A M P L E :

Wine sells for twenty pence a bottle.

Le vin se vend vingt sous la bouteille.*

P R A X I S.

Two crowns a bushel. How much a yard; four
écu m. boisseau m. combien verge f.
 guineas an ell. Seven farthings a pint. Three pence
guinée f. aune f. sept. liard m. pinte f. sou m.
 a pound. A penny a dozen. Thirty Shillings a barrel
livre f. sou m. douzaine f. chelin m. baril m.
 Five pounds a hundred. Seventy pounds a hoghead.
livre f. cent m. muid m.

V. *When only a part of a Substance or Species is denoted, that limited sense (answering in English to the word some, either expressed or understood) is signified in French by the partitive Article du m. de la f. and des pl. according to the Gender and Number of the Substantive, and its initial letter;*

E X A M P L E :

Eat some bread and drink water.

Mangez du pain et buvez de l'eau.

P R A X I S.

Send me some fish, some eggs and mustard, some
Envoyez moi poisson m. œuf m. moutarde f.
 pepper and salt. Some beans and bacon; Some beef
poivre m. sel m. fève f. lard m. bœuf m.
 and carrots; some mutton and turneps. She sells fruit.
carotte f. mouton m. navet m. vend fruit m.

* We also frequently use the particle *par*, instead of the Definite Article; as, Twenty-pence a bottle, *vingt sous par bouteille*. Two crowns a bushel, *deux écus par boisseau*. Three shillings a week, *trois-chelins par semaine*; &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION

VI. When a French Substantive is preceded by an Adjective, instead of the Articles du, de la, or des; we use the Particle de or d' for both numbers, and before either gender* ;

E X A M P L E:

I saw fine horses in his stables.

Je vis de beaux chevaux dans ses écuries.

P R A X I S.

This is | good cheese, excellent wine, but bad bread.

voici bon fromage m. excellent vin m. mais mauvais

I have spent happy moments here. As your brother has

passé heureux moment m. ici. comme frère

received great presents, tell him to buy new books.

reçu grand dites d' acheter nouveau livre m.

VII. If a Substantive is attended by two Adjectives connected by the particle and, the Article is to be repeated before both Adjectives, when each of them implies a different signification; otherwise the Article is only used before the first Adjective;

E X A M P L E:

1. The young and old soldiers did their duty.

Les jeunes et les vieux soldats firent leur devoir.

2. The pious and holy man whom you know, &c.

Le pieux et saint homme que vous connoissez, &c.

P R A X I S.

The quick and prudent execution of a great and vast

prompte f. sage c. grand m. vaste c.

project denotes a clever man. The fine and magnificent

projet m. désigne habile c. belle f. magnifique c.

house which you have | caused to be built | is not solid.

maison f. que fait bâtir solide.

* This rule relates only to cases where the sense is restrained by alluding to a part of that which is denoted in the phrase; for if the substantive referred to, includes the whole species or substance, the definite article is then to be used; Exam. *Il s'est défait des beaux chevaux qu'il avoit: not de beaux.*

VIII. *But there are some cases wherein Articles, though expressed in English, are not to be rendered into French; which may be better learned by practice, than by any particular rule;*

E X A M P L E:

Shall it be a holiday to-morrow?

Sera-t-il congé demain?

P R A X I S.

The more you play, the less you study. Have you a good
plus jouez moins étudiez bon
 stomach. Frederick the third was a great politician. Are
apétit m. Frédérique trois grand politique m.
 you a Scotchman. Have you a mind to read at present.
écossais m. envie de lire.

As this last Rule requires to be illustrated, let it be observed that we generally leave out the Article, though expressed in English;—1st. Before ordinal Adjectives annexed to proper names; Exam. Francis the first, François premier; Henry the fourth, Henri quatre; George the third, George trois; &c. and before the two numeral Adjectives Cent and Mille, followed either by a Substantive or a Pronoun, the Article a is suppressed in French, as in these Examples; I have won a thousand Guineas, j'ai gagné mille Guinées; I will lend you a hundred of them, je vous en prêterai cent; &c. But the Article the is not omitted before these two last-mentioned numbers; for the Substantive annexed to them generally relates to something else; Exam. I bring you the hundred guineas, which you lent me the other day, je vous apporte les cent Guinées que vous me prêtates l'autre jour; &c.—2dly. Before a substantive immediately following a verb that expresses an indivisible sense with it, or denotes an indefinite action, either of the body or the mind; Exam. To have a desire, avoir envie;*

* When proper names are distinguished by any other Adjective, used as a surname to kings and sovereigns, or as an epithet to cities, towns, &c. the Article is then expressed in French as in English; Exam. *Louis le Juste* était père de *Louis le Grand*, Lewis the Just was father of Lewis the Great.

to run a risk, *courir risque*, to set a value, *faire cas*; to put an end, *mettre fin*; &c.—3dly. When substantives are employed as adjectives; Exam. Alexander was more than a king, *Alexandre étoit plus que roi*; &c. as likewise after the verb *être*, if *ce* is not its subject, and when the substantive following it, is not attended by a relative pronoun, or any other appurtenance; Exam. He is a man, *il est homme*; &c.—4thly. After the particle *en*, as in these and the like examples; to be in a passion, *être en colère*; to go into the city, *aller en ville*; &c.—5thly. In beginning the Title, Preface, and Contents of a performance; and in the middle of sentences where the substantive, following the indefinite article, characterises, in a particular manner, the person or thing spoken of; Exam. A discourse on the duties of man, *discours sur les devoirs de l'homme*; the Preface, *Préface*; the Contents, *Table des matières*; the late Duke of York, a Prince of the blood, died on the &c. *le feu Duc d'York, Prince du sang, mourut le &c.*—6thly. Prefixed to the Adverbial particles more and less, as it appears by the foregoing Praxis p. 5.—7thly. When they come after a relative pronoun in sentences of admiration or exclamation; Exam. What a fine landscape! *Quel beau paysage!* What a crime! *Quel crime!* &c.—8thly. Before national names, and those of Trades and Professions; Exam. I am a Frenchman, *je suis François*; he was a printer, *il étoit imprimeur*; are you a protestant, *êtes vous protestant?* &c.—But should these last words be followed by a relative pronoun, the Article is then to be expressed in French as in English; Exam. I am a Frenchman, who &c. *Je suis un François, qui &c.* Lastly, when several substantives, immediately following each other, are governed by the same verb, or imply the same idea, they may be construed into French without an Article; Exam. Towers, trees, spires, were overthrown by that whirlwind; *Tours, arbres, clochers, furent renversés par cet ouragan*; &c. But after all that can be said on this head, there will be still something wanting, to be supplied by much reading and good conversation.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE,

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Articles.

The ant is the emblem of industry; the lamb and dove

fourmi f. emblème m. industrie f. agneau m. colombe f.

of meekness and humility. Exercise and temperance

douceur f. humilité (b mute) tempérance f.

strengthen the constitution. Cheerfulness procures the

fortifiant tempérament m. gaieté f. procure

happiness of the soul. Covetousness promiseth wealth;

bouheur m. âme f. avarice f. promet richesses pl.

luxury pleasures; and ambition power. Secresy is

luxé m. plaisirs pl. pouvoir m. secret m.

the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of wisdom.

clé f. prudence f. sanctuaire m. sagesse f.

Time is not the only master of experience, books instruct;

temps m. seul livre m. instruisent

history is full of old generals conquered by young soldiers.

histoire f. plains vieux conquis par jeune c. soldats m.

Fame, honours, and dignities are things uncertain.

renommée f. honneur m. dignité f. chose f. incertaines.

and precarious. Necessity is the mother of projects.

précaires c. mère projet m.

Trade enriches, luxury enervates, and arts amuse.

commerce m. enrichit affaiblit art m. amuse.

Iron and steel are more useful than gold or silver.

fer m. acier m. utile c. que or m. argent m.

Coffee | is sold for | four shillings a pound. Green hurts

café m. se vend chelin m. livre f. vert m. blesse

the sight less than red. Generosity | begets us | friends.

vie f. rouge m. générosité f. nous fait ami m.

Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of greatness.

soin malheurs pl. souvent compagnons pl. grandeur f.

Neither the love of friends, or hatred of enemies; nei-

ni amour ou haine f. ennemi m.

ther hope of pleasure, or gain; nor fear of pain, or loss,

espérance f. plaisir m. profit m. ni crainte f. peine f. perte f.

ought | to make us | forsake virtue. The more a country

doivent nous faire abandonner pays m.

is inhabited, the more opulent it is (more it is opulent).

peuple riche il

RULES for the Construction of SUBSTANTIVES.

I. *IF two or more Substantives, depending on each other, come together without being divided by any Stop, their order is to be reversed in French; that is, the last is to be construed first, and the first last; see the Grammar, p. 252;*

E X A M P L E:

The boy's hat; a silver dish.

Le chapeau du garçon; un plat d'argent.

P R A X I S.

The king's accession. The street door. A pair of silk stockings, A scarlet cloak. A brick house. St. James's market. Miss N—'s fan and gloves. Your sister's apron.

*roi m. avènement m. rue f. porte f. paire f. soie
bas pl. écarlatte f. manteau m. brique maison f. Jacques
marché m. éventail m. gant m. sœur tablier m.*

II. *But, if the first Substantive serves to denote some commodity or liquor, the Article au m, à la f, or à l', before a vowel, and aux pl. is to be used, in French, before it*;*

E X A M P L E:

The butter man is at the door.

L'homme au beurre est à la porte.

P R A X I S.

Mr. A— lives in the Hay-market. Do you like | milk coffee? Bring the gravy soup, and the rice pudding. Call the rabbit man, and | send for | the oyster woman. Go and see | if the pie woman has got some apple tarts.

*demeure dans foin m. marché m. aimez-vous lait m.
café m. apportez jus m. soupe f. ris m. boudin m. appelez
lapins pl. envoyez chercher huitres pl. allez voir
si pâté. pl. a pommes pl. tarte f.*

* If it serves to denote the form or use of the object spoken of, the Particle à is used instead of the Article, as *Un verre à vin*, a wine glass; *la boîte à thé*, the tea-canister; *des armes à feu*, fire-arms, &c.

III. *When we are speaking of or to a person in a high station, or to whom we would shew respect; civility requires in French the use of Monseigneur, Monsieur, Madame or Mademoiselle*, before his or her Title, but not in speaking of or to our kindred; we also prefix them sometimes to abusive names;*

E X A M P L E S:

1. Your father and the Prince Nassau, &c.
Monf. *votre père et Monseign. le Prince de N.*
2. Mr. Lazy-bones — *Monsieur le Paresseux.*

P R A X I S.

The prince of Wales has been | out of order | The Duke
prince m. Galles indifférent duc m.
 of N—— | was speaking | to your brother. Captain
parloit frère m. capitaine m.
 S—— dined yesterday with your aunt, and her daughter.
dina hier avec tante f. fille f.

IV. *Substantives denoting measure, such as Ell, Yard, Foot, Inch, League, &c. require the Particle de (of) after them; but in these expressions the first Adjective of number, that precedes them, must also have de before it, and the Adjectives of dimension are more elegantly rendered by their Substantives;*

E X A M P L E:

A ditch twenty feet deep.
Un fossé de vingt piés de profondeur.

P R A X I S.

A young man five feet eight inches high. A table
j une c. homme m. puce m. haut m, e f. table f.
 two inches thick. A river ten feet broad, and four deep,
deux épais m, e f. rivière c. large c. profond
 A fir plank seven yards long, and nine inches wide.
épin m. planche f. verge f. long m, u f. large

* The first of these two last Titles is only given, in French, to a married Gentlewoman; and the last always to a single Lady, tho' she be ever so old; and we say, in the plural, *Messieurs, Messieurs, Mesdames, &c.*

V. *Proper names of Persons and Places do not, in general, admit of Articles, but have their relations with another Substantive expressed by the particles de or à; unless they are applied to particular objects, or used in the Plural Number;*

E X A M P L E:

Sylla gained at Rome an absolute power.

Sylla s'acquit à Rome un pouvoir absolu.

P R A X I S.

Demosthenes and Cicero were two great orators, the

Demosthène Cicéron étoient orateur m. first flourished at Athens, in the age of Philip and

fleurit Athènes dans siècle m. Philippe Alexander; the other at Rome in the age of Augustus.

Alexandre autre c. Auguste The Venus of Praxiteles was a master-piece of statuary.

Venus f. Praxitèle étoit chef-d'œuvre m. sculpture.

VI. *The names of Countries, Kingdoms, Provinces, Republics, Islands, Mountains, Seas, Rivers*, Winds and Seasons, being spoken of, require the Definite Article in French;*

E X A M P L E:

Europe, France, Burgundy, Mount Etna, &c.

L'Europe, la France, la Bourgogne, le Mont Etna, &c.

P R A X I S.

America is preferable to Asia and Africa. Great-

Amérique Asie Afrique Grand-

Britain contains England and Scotland; is situated to

Bretagne f. comprend Angleterre Ecosse située f.

the north of France, from which it is parted by the Channel.

nord m. France f. dont séparée manche f.

The kingdom of Portugal lies to the west of Spain.

royaume m. Portugal m. est ouest Espagne.

* The word *River*, which is often prefixed in English to the name of a River, is generally left out in French; therefore, we do not say *la rivière de la Tamise*, nor *la rivière Tamise*, the river Thames, but simply *la Tamise*.

The two last Rules being liable to exceptions, Learners are to take notice that, with respect to Rule V. there are to be excepted—1st. Most all the renowned Italian Poets and Painters, such as le Tasse, l'Arioste, l'Arétin, le Guarini, le Titien, &c. tho' we do not say le Michel-Ange, le Raphaël, nor le Sanazar.—2^{dly}. Those of women for whom we have no great value, which is always the case, in French, when we mention the name of an Actress, before which we use also the Definite Article, even when le, la, du, or des makes part of their names, as, la Lefèvre, or la le Fèvre, la Dulac, or la du Lac, &c. Exam. It is a dance of Mrs. le Fevre, c'est une danse de la Lefèvre, or de la le Fèvre; &c. There are also excepted from proper Names of Places, some before which custom has made the Definite Article, with its variations, part of their names; such as le Caire, (Cairo) du Caire, au Caire; the most noted that fall under this exception are, la Havanne, le Havre, la Haye, le Mexique, le Pérou, &c. See the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 184, Sect. 5. The exceptions relating to Rule VI. are—1st. The Proper names of Kingdoms, Provinces, Republics, and Islands, which receive their denomination from their capital City; for they are used in French as in English, without the Article; Exam. Naples, Avignon, Venise, Malthe*, &c.—2^{dly}. When the fore-mentioned Proper names are preceded by words denoting venir de, to come from; sortir de, to go out of; demeurer en, to live in; or aller en, to go to; they are also to be used without the Article.—3^{dly}. When the same proper Names follow immediately a Substantive, they are only preceded by the Particle de, or d' before a vowel, instead of the Article; Exam. du vin de Bourgogne; les habitans d'Irlande; &c. yet if an Adjective be used with the said Names, the general Rule is to be followed, as, du vin de la haute Bourgogne, &c.

* Examples being sufficient here for this, and the following exceptions, the Learner may have recourse to the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 184, which contains a list of those which are used with and without the Article.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE,

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Substantives.

One man's fault is another man's lesson. The Countess
 of N. is very charitable. A man's first concern is to avoid
 his conscience's upbraidings; and his second the world's
 censure. My tutor's brother's partner's relations live in
 Buckinghamshire. Diana's anger was the cause of Acteon's
 death, and Helen's beauty Troy's destruction. St. Paul's
 church is 500 feet long within; 100 feet broad at the
 entrance; but 249 from the porticos. The courage of
 Achilles and Hector, the valour of Diomedes and Ajax,
 the fidelity of Andromache and Penelope, are celebrated in
 the writings of Homer, who was of Smyrna or Chios.
 Raphael, Tasso, and Ariosto lived in the time of the
 Medicis. Iceland, situated to the North of Europe, is 400 miles
 long and 150 broad, and belongs to the King of Denmark.
 The Tiber, a river of Italy, has its source in Mount Appen-
 nine, passes by Rome, and falls into the Mediterranean, at
 Ostia. The famous canal of Languedoc, | in the | South of
 France is 100 miles long; and procures a communication
 between the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

bomme m. faute f. un autre leçon f. Comtesse f.

charitable c. soin m. d'éviter,

reproches pl. second m. monde m.

censure f. précepteur m. frère m. associé m. parent m. demeurent

comté m. Diane colère f. fut cause f.

mort f. Hélène beauté f. Troie ruine f.

église f. en dedans large à

entrée f. d'un portique à l'autre courage m.

Achille valeur f. Diomède

fidélité f. Andromaque célèbres d'un

écrit m. Homère écrit Smyrne Chios.

Raphaël Tasse Arioste vivoient tems m.

Islande située nord m. à mille

large appartient roi m. Danemarck.

Tibre m. rivière f. Italie sa mont m. Appen-

nin passe par se jette Méditerranée f.

fameux m. au Sud

France f. procure

entre mer f. Atlantique

RULES for the Construction of ADJECTIVES.

- I. *A FRENCH Adjective must be of the same Gender and Number as the Substantive it has a reference to;*

E X A M P L E:

A little boy and a little girl;

Un petit garçon et une petite fille.

P R A X I S.

The first picture. The second street from hence.
premier m, e f. tableau m. second m, e f. rue f. d'ici
 A fine garden. Two fine flowers. A bad
* b-eau m, elle f. jardin m. fleur f. mauvais m, e f.
 rider upon a good horse. A good lock upon a
cavalier m. fer bon m, ne f. cheval m. serrure f.
 bad door. I have got a little bird in a small cage.
porte f. oiseau m. dans cage f.

II. *If an Adjective belongs to several Substantives of different Genders, it is to agree in Gender and Number with the last; but if a verb, or any other word, or words, should be between the last Substantive and the Adjective, in that case the Adjective must be of the Masculine Gender, and in the Plural;*

E X A M P L E:

1. His face and hands covered,
Son visage et ses mains couvertes;
2. His hands and face covered,
Ses mains et son visage couvert;
3. His face and hands are covered,
Son visage et ses mains sont couverts.

* For the readiest way of finding the different Gender of French Adjectives, this mark (-) is used to indicate where the *Feminine* termination takes place; Example, *b-eau m, elle f;* write *beau m, belle f.* and so forth.

P R A X I S.

Mr. F — came yesterday | to our house | with a coat
vint hier chez nous avec habit m.
 and waistcoat full of spots. Your master and your
veste f. plein m, e f. tache f. maître m.
 mistress are very civil. Our man-servant and our maid-
maîtresse f. civil m, e f. valet m. ser-
 servant are idle, saucy, and extremely proud.
vante f. oisi-f m, ve f. insolent m, e f. orgueilleux m, se f.

III. If an Adjective is used without a Substantive, the French Adjective must then be of the Masculine Gender ;

E X A M P L E :

The industrious are praised ;
Les industrieux sont loués.

P R A X I S.

The slothful shall be punished, and the diligent
pareilleux m, se f. puni m, e f. diligent m, e f.
 rewarded. The ignorant are despised, but the learned
récompensé m. ignorant m, e f. méprisé m. mais savans
 esteemed. The virtuous are respected even | by the |
estimé m. vertueux m, se f. respecté m. même des
 wicked. Death spares neither the rich nor the poor.
méchans mort f. n'épargne ni riche c. ni pauvre c.

IV. Verbal Adjectives, that is, Participles used adjectively, must always be placed, in French, after their Substantives* ;

E X A M P L E :

He is a dead man ; It is a convincing proof ;
C'est un homme mort. C'est une preuve convainquante.

* Except in these two expressions *la morte saison*, the dead time of the year ; *morte eau*, the slack or dead water ; a sea term, expressing the still in of the tide at the height of the flood, just before it returns again.

OF ADJECTIVES.

15

P R A X I S.

An inhabited country. *habité* *pays* m. A frequented place. *fréquenté* *lieu* m. A forsaken house. *abandonnée*
 A broken stick. *rompu* *bâton* m. Two furnished rooms. *garni* m, e f. *chambre* f. A gilt frame. *dorée*
maison f. *soles*. Two boiled cods. *bouilli* m, e f. *morue* f.
bordure f. *fricassé* m, e f. *sole* f. Some pickled cucumbers; and some candy'd oranges.
mariné m, e f. *concombre* m. *confit* m, e f. *orange* f.

V. *Adjectives expressing any Colour, Form, Elementary, and Physical Quality, or Names of Nations, are placed after their Substantives; and likewise, those ending in ique, esque, ile, and ule; as historique, grotesque, puérile, crédule, &c.*

E X A M P L E:

A round table; A Scotch officer;
Une table ronde. Un officier Ecoissois.

P R A X I S.

Some white wine, and brown bread. *blanc* *vin* m. *bis* *pain* m. *noir* *bas* m, pl. Black stockings.
 A red ribbon. *ruban* m. A square box. *quarré* m, e f. *boîte* f. A very cold country. *bien froid* *pays* m.
 A warm wind. *chaud* *vent* m. Italian proverbs. *Italien* *proverbe* m. A French servant. *François* *domestique* m.

VI. *The Adjective new (neuf and nouveau) must be rendered by neuf * and placed after its Substantive, when it is said of Material objects; and by nouveau *, which may be placed either before or after, when said of Productions of the mind;*

E X A M P L E:

A new coat, a new scheme;
Un habit neuf, un nouveau projet.

* The feminine gender of *neuf* is *neuve*, and of *nouveau* is *nouvelle*; in other cases we make use of *nouveau*; Exam. new wine, *vin nouveau*; the new viceroy, *le nouveau viceroy*; except in *pain frais*, new bread; *lait doux*, &c.

P R A X I S.

He has spoiled his new hat, and his new clothes. She
 has lost her new ribbon. I have read the new comedy.
 Have you bought the new pamphlet. Mistress D —
 built three years | ago | a new house in Oxfordshire.

gâté *chapeau m.* *habits m.*
perdu *ruban m.* *lu* *comédie f.*
acheté *brochure f.* *Madame*
bâti *il y a* *maison f.* *dans* *comté m.*

VII. *The Adjective cher (dear), denoting Price, is placed after, and signifying Affection, before its Substantive*. We have others, which, like this, vary their position according to the sense they imply; see the Practical Grammar; p. 246;*

E X A M P L E:

A dear hat, my dear sister;
Un chapeau cher, ma chère sœur.

P R A X I S.

My dear child | there is | a dear book, and dear
 buckles. Your dear aunt is married. My dear father is
 sick. My dear soul | these are | very dear ruffles.

enfant m. *voilà* *livre m.* *cher m. e f.*
boucle f. *tante f.* *marie m, e f.* *père m.*
malade e. *ame f.* *ce sont* *fort* *manchette f.*

VIII. *When there are but two Adjectives in a Sentence relating to a Substantive, it is sometimes indifferent to put them after or before it; but if there are three or more, they must be placed after it, with the Particle et (and) before the last;*

* There are no certain Rules for placing other Adjectives either before or after Substantives; yet, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, petit, saint, and vieux* are usually placed before them.

E X A M P L E:

A good, sober, and virtuous *wife*;
Une femme bonne, sobre, et vertueuse.

P R A X I S.

A wise, just, and bountiful God. A cruel, inflexible,
sage c. juste c. bienfaisant m, e f. cruel m. inflexible c.
and revengeful enemy. A short and unhappy life.
vindicatif m, ve f. ennemi m. court m, e f. malheureux m, se f, vie f.
A constant, sincere, and disinterested friend is scarce.
constant m, e f. sincère c. déintéressé m, e f. ami m. rare c.

IX. In speaking of Sovereigns and of the Days of the Month, Adjectives of Number are now used in French, instead of Adjectives of Order *, except these two, first and second;

E X A M P L E S:

1. Lewis the first, the second, the third, &c.
Louis premier, second, trois, &c.
2. The first, the second, the third, &c. of June;
Le premier, le second, le trois, &c. de Juin.

P R A X I S.

Edward the sixth was Henry the eighth's successor. James
Edouard fut Henri successeur m. Jacques
the second died in France | on the | fourteenth of
mourut en le
September, 1701. George the third was crowned at West-
Septembre fut couronné à
minster Abbey, on the 22d of September, | in the year | 1761.
Abbaye f. l'an

* In writing the date of the year, in French, we do not make use of *mille* nor *cents*, but of *mil* and *cent*; Exam. in the year 1793, *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-treize*; see the Note on the Numbers, in the Grammar, p. 75.

X. *The following Adjectives, aise, avide, capable, content, digne, joyeux, las, libre, nécessaire, with their Derivatives; and verbal Adjectives, as accusé, chargé, &c. require the Particle de before the following Substantive, Pronoun or Verb, though at, to, after, with, &c. should be used in English;*

E X A M P L E:

I am overjoyed at his recovery;
Je suis bien aise de son rétablissement.

P R A X I S.

He is very greedy after wealth. She is charged with that
avide c. richesses pl. accusé m, e f. ce
 crime. Are you able to read this book? I am satisfied
crime m. capable c. lire livre m. content
 with your answer; and you are free to go away now.
réponse f. libre vous en aller à présent.

XI. *Adjectives of Number followed by a Substantive and a Participle preterite, require the particle de to be prefixed to the Participle, which must agree with the foregoing Substantive;*

E X A M P L E:

There were ten houses burnt;
Il y eut dix maisons de brûlées.

P R A X I S.

In the last engagement between the Russians and the
dans bataille f. entre Russe
 Turks, the latter * had five thousand men kill'd, and seven
Turc curent mille tué m.
 wounded; the former * had but three hundred kill'd.
bleffé m. ceux-ci m, plur. n'en curent que

* The word *latter*, in this and the like expression, is to be rendered by the Pronoun *celui-ci m, sing. ceux-ci m, plur. &c.* and the word *former* following it, by *celui-là m, sing. ceux-là, m. pl. &c.* see the Demonstr. Pron. p. vii.

Of the COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

I. *A Comparative** is formed in French by putting the *Particle* plus before the *Positive*. The *Superlative** is formed by prefixing *le m, la f, les c. pl.* to the *Comparative*, according to its *Gender and Number*; see the *Grammar*, p. 71.

E X A M P L E S:

Gregory is Younger; Amelia is the tallest;
Grégoire est plus jeune; Amélie est la plus grande.

P R A X I S.

The sun is larger and brighter than the moon. This
soleil m. large c. éclatant que lune f.
 man appears older than you, because you have better
paraît vieux m. parceque
 clothes on. This lady is the handsomest of the three,
habit m. dame f. belle f.
 but the oldest is richer than the youngest. *Princes* are
mais vieille f. riche c. jeune c.
 often unhappier, than the greatest part of their subjects.
malheureux partie f. sujet m.

II. *When the second term of comparison expresses some portion or measure of the comparative quantity, the Particle* than *or by which precedes it, is to be render'd by de, instead of que or par;*

E X A M P L E:

I have lost more than two guineas;
J'ai perdu plus de deux guinées.

* From this Rule are excepted these three, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, less; and a few Superlatives derived from the Latin; as, *serénissime*, most serene; *illustrissime*, most illustrious; *éminentissime*, most eminent; *excellantissime*, &c. see the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 72.

P R A X I S.

It is more than six months since he bought a house for
Il y a *mois pl.* *que* *acheta* *maison f.*
 two hundred guineas, and in less than two days, he sold it
deux *guinée f.* *en* *jour m.* *la vendit*
 for more than five hundred: it was too dear by half.
vingt *cinq* *c' étoit trop* *moitié f.*

III. *When a comparative, followed by the Particle que (than), precedes a verb, which is not in the Infinitive mood, the French idiom requires ne to be placed before such a verb* ;*

E X A M P L E:

He is richer than I thought ;
Il est plus riche que je ne croyois.

P R A X I S.

I am stronger than I was. You sing better than you
fort m, e f. *étois* *chantez*
 did. I have taken more pains than I had done before. I am
f. s'ex *pris* *de peine* *avais* *f. il auparavant*
 less fatigued than I was. They are richer than they were.
fatigué m, e f. *riche c.* *étoient*

Observe—1st. That there are some comparative ways of speaking in English which are to be rendered into French by plus or moins only, without expressing the Article ; EXAM. The longer the Nights are, the shorter are the Days ; plus les Nuits sont longues, plus les Jours sont courts ; &c.—2dly. That, when the Superlative is followed by a verb, of which it is not itself the subject, and a relative pronoun expressed or understood, the verb must be put, in French, in the Subjunctive ; EXAM. I am speaking of the most learned man that is, Je parle du plus habile homme qui soit ; She is the richest heiress I have ever heard of, c'est la plus riche héritière dont j'aie jamais oui

* But if the verb following *than*, is in the Infinitive mood, or if there come before it another conjunctive particle, the *ne* must be left out: Ex. He is happier than to command, *il est plus heureux que de commander.* She is handsomer than when I saw her, *elle plus est belle que quand je la vis ; &c.*

parler; &c.—3dly. *That the verb, which usually follows the particle than in English, after a Comparative, may elegantly be left out in French, if the Pronoun or Substantive prefixed to it relate to another Subject or Person, than that mentioned in the first part of the Sentence; EXAM. You are older than she is, Vous êtes plus vieux qu'elle; and not qu'elle n'est, or qu'elle est, as in English.*—4thly, *That the Adjectives tout, demi, feu, nud, fort, court, with many others, deviate from the Rules of Construction before mention'd, in the following cases; Tout is invariable in its termination, before an Adjective of the masculine Gender, follow'd by que; and is expressed in English by altho', as, or whatever, as the sense requires: EXAM. Les Philosophes tout éclairés or tout savans qu'ils sont, ignorent bien des choses; &c. Before the name of a city or town of the feminine Gender, it does not alter its termination, and causes the Adjectives following, if there be any, to be of the masculine Gender; EXAM. Tout Venise en est allarmé, all Venice is alarmed at it; &c. Demi (half) is invariable in its termination, when it precedes a Substantive; but admits of an e, if placed after it; EXAM. Dans une demi-heure, in half an hour's time; dans une heure et demie; in an hour and half's time; deux livres et demie; &c. Feu (late) being used before an Article, or Pronoun possessive, follow'd by a Substantive, is also invariable in its termination; EXAM. Feu le Roi; feu la Reine; feu votre mère; but, if otherwise, it agrees in gender only with its Substantive, for it has no Plural; EXAM. Le feu Roi; la feue Reine; votre feue mère; &c. Nud or nu (naked or bare) prefixed to its substantive with an hyphen, is also invariable; thus we say and write, nu-piés; nu-jambes; nu-tête; but when it follows its substantive, it must agree with it in gender and number; as les piés nus or nuds; les jambes nues; la tête nue; &c. Court and Fort, as well as any other Adjective used adverbially, such as faux, haut, bas, clair, mauvais, &c. are in this case invariable; EXAM. Elles sont demeurées court; ils se sont fort; elles chantent faux; &c.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Adjectives.

The instructions of adversity are wholesome, though
adversité f. salutaire c. quoique
 unpleasing; the lessons of prosperity are pleasing, but
desagréable c. leçons f. prospérité f. agréable c. mais
 pernicious: The first discovers sometimes concealed
pernicieux m, se f. découvre quelque-fois inconnu m, e f.
 virtues, and the other hidden vices. The man of judg-
vertu f. caché m, e f. vice m. sens
 ment forms useful, but not extensive projects; it belongs
forme utile c. pas grand m, e f. projet m. appartient
 only to the man of imagination to form vast, or sublime
seulement esprit m. de former vaste c. sublime c.
 schemes. Riches are uncertain, and common to the
plan m. richesses f. incertain m, e f. commun m, e f.
 good and the wicked, but honour and virtue are lasting,
bien m, ne f. méchant m, e f. honneur m. durable c.
 The Seine, a capital river, is longer than the Thames.
Seine f. long m, u f. Tamise f.
 but the latter is wider than the former. The wittiest and
mais large c. spirituel m, le f.
 wisest man, without good-breeding, is like an unpolished
sage c. sous éducation f. comme brut m, e f.
 piece of marble. The Havannah, or rather the Island of
pièce f. marbre m. Havanne f. plutôt île
 Cuba, was taken by the English | on the | twelfth of
fut prise Anglois m. le
 August, 1762, under the reign of George the third.
Août sous règne m.
 Annibal was braver than any Carthaginian officer; he
Hannibal brave c. Carthaginois officier m.
 | was no | more than 26 years (of age), when he was
n'avoit pas an m. quand fut
 made a general. The poorer people are, the less care they
fait général pauvre c. gens pl. d'embaras
 have. (*The French Construction of this last Sentence is, More
 the people are poor, less they have care*).

RULES for the Construction of PRONOUNS.

SUCH is the nature of Pronouns, that some of them are like Substantives, and some like Adjectives; but they are most of them so intricate, that I look upon the construction of this Part of speech as the most perplexing of all; therefore I will endeavour to display it with as much clearness and brevity as my plan will admit: but, Learners are to observe that several Pronouns being never used without verbs, it is impossible not to introduce them in some of the following Exercises, though it is deviating from my plan; however, this necessary anticipation will hardly give any trouble to those who have either learned the Conjugation of French Verbs, or will look for their respective terminations in the Introduction.

I. *The Personal Pronouns, je (I), tu (thou), il (he), nous (we) vous, (you), &c. are used with Verbs as their Subjects*, either before, or after them, if they imply an Interrogation;*

E X A M P L E:
I am ready. Is *he* at home?
Je suis prêt. Est-il au logis?

P R A X I S.
I eat. Thou readeſt. He plays. We talk. You hear.
manger (1) lire (4 ir) jouer (1) parler (1) entendre (4)
They laugh. Am I praised? Art thou blamed? Is he
rire (4 ir) être (4 ir) louer (1) blâmer (1)
rewarded? Are they condemned? Have you received?
récompenser (1) condamner (1) avoir (3 ir) recevoir (3)
Have they done? Had they dined! Was ſhe with you?
faire (4 ir) dîner (1) étoit avec

* The Subject, called by the Latins the *Nominative* of the Verb, is either one or several Pronouns, or Substantives, to which the Verb relates.

II. *The Pronoun il and elle (it) sing. ils and elles plur. are used for inanimate Things as well as for living Creatures;*

E X A M P L E :

Take this book, it is very well bound ;
Prenez ce livre, il est fort bien relié.

P R A X I S.

Your coat is too long, and it is badly made. The door
habit m. long mal fait porte f.
 | must not | be opened; is it shut? Give me two or
ne doit pas ouvert m, e f. fermé m, e f. ou
 three apples if they are ripe. Learn this lesson by heart,
 pomme f. si mûr m, e f. apprenez leçon f. par cœur
 it is very short; and do this exercise, it is easy.
court m, e f. faites devoir m. facile.

III. *These Personal Pronouns, he, she, or they, being followed by the Relative Pronouns that, who, or whom, must never be rendered into French by il qui, elle qui, &c. but by the Demonstrative Pronouns celui qui m, celle qui f, for the singular Number; and ceux qui m, celles qui f, plural;*

E X A M P L E :

He or she that loves to speak much is blameable ;
Celui ou celle qui aime à parler beaucoup est blâmable.

P R A X I S.

He that lives honestly is esteemed. She to whom I
vit honnêtement estimé
 spoke is married. She that stands by her is the youngest,
parlois marié m, e f. est auprès d'elle jeune c.
 though she appears the oldest. They who despise learning
quoique paroissent vieille f. méprisent sciences pl.
 are despicable. Happy is he who shuns bad company.
méprisable c. Heureux fuit compagnies f. pl.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS. 25

IV. If the last mentioned Pronouns, he, she, or they, are separated in English from that, who, or whom, the Relative qui or que must nevertheless be placed immediately after celui, &c. and in the second State, dont, for de qui, is used;

E X A M P L E :

He is very happy who can moderate his passions ;
Celui qui peut modérer ses passions est très-heureux.

P R A X I S.

They deserve being punished who disobey their masters.
méritent d'être punis désobéissent à maître
 He is contemptible who supports idleness. She is praise-
méprisable encourage paresse f. lou-
 worthy who prefers a good reputation to the pleasures
able c. préfère réputation f. plaisir m.
 of this world. They have a noble soul who prefer death
monde m. ame f. préfèrent mort f.
 to infamy. He of whom you speak is a coward. They
infamie f. parlent poltron m.
 overload nature who drink without | being dry | .
surchargent boivent sans avoir soif.

Observe—1st. That the Personal Pronouns I and thou, being either followed by a Relative Pronoun, or used immediately after any Tense of the impersonal Verb it is, are also to be rendered by Conjunctive Pronouns; Exam. I who speak to you have seen it several times, *Moi qui vous parle, je l'ai vu plusieurs fois*; It is I, and not you, *c'est moi, et non pas vous*; &c. See R. V. p. 29.—2dly. That the Particle ce is frequently used instead of il or elle sing. and ils or elles plur. Exam. He or She is a pattern to virtue, *c'est un modèle de vertu*; they are patterns of economy, *ce sont des modèles d'économie*; &c. See the note annexed to p. 257, in the Practical French Grammar.—3dly. That the Personal Pronoun they is also rendered by the particle on, in speaking in a general sense; Exam. They do not allow that in France, *on ne permet pas cela en France*; &c. See p. 117.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

THERE are 16 Conjunctive Pronouns in French, on which the following Observations are to be made, in order to remove the difficulty, which Learners often meet with in making a proper choice, and right use of them, *viz.*

moi, *c, sing.*
toi, *c, sing.* { 1st.—These are placed after the second Person, in both Numbers of the Imperative Mood, of Verbs used affirmatively; and after Prepositive Particles; such as *for, with, of, to, &c.*

me *c, sing.*
te *c, sing.*
se *c, s. & p.* { 2^d.—These are used immediately before verbs, and are common to both Genders; *me* and *te* serve for the Singular, but *se* for both Numbers.

lui *m, sing.*
elle *f, sing.*
soi *c, sing.*
eux *m, plur.*
elles *f, plur.* { 3^d.—These Pronouns are set immediately after prepositive Particles, such as *for, with, against, of, to, unto, &c.* But, as *soi* is not to be used indiscriminately for *lui* or *elle*, Learners should not overlook the 2^d. Remark, which is annexed to the following Rules, p. 29.

lui *c, sing.*
leur *c, plur.* { 4th.—These are placed either before or after Verbs, according to the Rule, if they can be resolved by *to him, or to her* in the Singular; and by *to them* in the Plural.

le *m, sing.*
la *f, sing.*
les *c, plur.* { 5th.—These are generally set after and before Verbs, if they cannot be construed in English with the Particle *to* prefixed to them.

nous *c, plur.*
vous *c, plur.* { 6th.—These are placed either before or after Verbs, according to the 1st. 2^d. and 3^d. Rules.

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS. 27

I. *The Conjunctive Pronouns prefixed to the 1st. 4th. 5th. and 6th. observations, except soi, are used in their respective sense, after the second Person, singular or plural, of the Imperative, provided no Negative particle occurs in that Phrase ;*

E X A M P L E :

Give me. Bring him. Lend us, &c.
Donnez moi. Apportez lui. Prêtez nous.

P R A X I S.

Shew me that, give it me. Bring me your exercise,
montrez cela donnez Apportez devoir m.
 alter it, and afterwards write it * fair. Help us. Write to
corrigez ensuite mettez au-net aidez écrivez
 him. Send her some fruit. Forgive them for this time.
envoyez fruit m. pardonnez pour fois f.

II. *When two Verbs, attended with Conjunctive Pronouns and used in the second person of the Imperative Mood, are joined with the Particle and, it is more elegant, notwithstanding the directions contained in the Rule before mentioned, to place the Pronoun, of the second Verb, before than after it ;*

E X A M P L E :

Take it, and eat it ;
Prenlez le, et le mangez.

P R A X I S.

See him, and comfort him. Write to her, and tell her.
voyez consolez écrivez dites
 Admonish them, and correct them. Rise, and get ready
réprimandez corrigez levez-vous s'apprêter (1)
 to go out. Speak to her and bring her hither, if you can.
à sortir parlez amenez ici si pouvez

* The Learner is to observe that the Conjunctive Pronoun *le* or *la* does not always admit of an elision before an initial vowel as the Article *le* or *la* does ; see the exceptions contained in the *Practical French Grammar* p. 41.

III. *The Conjunctive Pronouns, prefixed to the 2d. 4th. 5th. and 6th. observations, are placed immediately before Verbs, whether there be a Negative Particle used with them, or not; except, however, in the case which is specified in the first Rule.*

E X A M P L E :

Do not throw him on the ground; he beat me.

Ne le jettez pas à terre; il me battit.

P R A X I S.

Can you send it me to-morrow? Do not give it him. I

Pourriez envoyer demain donner (1)

will bring it you if you desire it. Do you hate me? You

apporter (1) si exiger (1) haïr (2 ir)

don't answer me. I love you with all my heart. She told

répondre (4) aimer (1) de cœur m. dire (4 ir)

me yesterday, that you was very troublesome to her.

bier que étiez incommode

IV. *When Conjunctive Pronouns are used with a Compound Tense, i. e. with an Auxiliary Verb and a Participle of the Preterite, they are to be placed before the Auxiliary;*

E X A M P L E :

Has he given her what he had promised her?

Lui a-t-il donné ce qu'il lui avoit promis?

P R A X I S.

Has she returned you the book which you had lent her?

rendre (4) livre m. que prêter (1)

Have you told him that you had sent it me? Have they

dit que envoyer (1 ir)

ordered it? Shall they have it in time? Has he bought it?

ordonner (1) à tems acheter (1)

I have wrote to him, but he has not | yet answered | me.

écrit mais encore fait réponse

OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS. 29

V. *Conjunctive Pronouns are also used, in French, 1st. After the Impersonal Verb it is, &c. 2dly. After Particles, tho' Personal Pronouns are used in English in both cases;*

E X A M P L E:

It is neither *I* nor *he*, but it is *she*;
Ce n'est ni moi ni lui, mais c'est elle.

P R A X I S.

Was it he that conquered Mexico? Is it you who deny
qui conquit Méxique m. qui niera
 it? It is not I, but he and she. It was neither he nor
mais ni ni
 I, but it was either you or they. I have said it | as well
mais ou ou dit aussi bien
 as | they. Do as I, or else our master will be very angry.
que faites ou bien maître bien fâché.

Observe.—1st. That the English pronouns corresponding with those prefixed to the third and fourth observations, p. 26, are often resolved into French by the Particles en and y, for either Gender and Number, and are, like them, placed immediately before Verbs, as may be seen in the Third Part of these Exercises, from p. 121. to p. 127.—2dly. That soi is used instead of lui or elle in sentences whose subject is a Substantive mentioned in an indefinite sense; Exam. Every body acts for himself, chacun agit pour soi; &c. But, if the Substantive is used in a definite sense, lui or elle must be used according to the Gender of their antecedent; Exam. Mr. R—minds himself only, and cares for nobody else, Mons. R—ne pense qu'à lui, et ne se soucie de personne; &c.—3dly. That même (self) is frequently joined to the Conjunctive Pronouns moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, sing. as well as mêmes (selves) to nous, vous, eux, elles, Plur. in order to denote, in a particular manner, the object spoken of; Exam. Every man may himself add to the advantages and miseries of life, tout homme peut soi-même, or les hommes peuvent eux-mêmes, ajouter aux avantages et aux misères de la vie; &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive Pronouns are always placed before their Substantives, and must be of the same Gender and Number ;

E X A M P L E :

My father, my mother, and my brothers ;
Mon père, ma mère, et mes frères.

P R A X I S.

Go to my neighbour's*, enquire after his son. Have you
allez chez voisin m. informez-vous de fils m.
 seen my canary-birds? Walk in our garden.
vu ser in m. promenez-vous dans jardin m.
 Examine his papers. Look for | my letter. Don't
examinez papier m. cherchez lettre f. ne
 go out without an umbrella, your gloves and your fan.
sortez pas sans parasol m. gant m. éventail m.

II. *The masculine Pronouns mon, ton, son, must be used instead of the feminine ma, ta, sa, before a feminine Substantive beginning either with a Vowel or with an h not aspirated ;*

E X A M P L E :

It was my intention. It is his humour.
C'étoit mon intention. C'est son humeur.

P R A X I S.

Her affection for me is not great. Thy sword is too
affection f. pour grand m, e f. épée f. trop
 long. My action is not blameable. His history is
long m, u- f. action f. blamable c. histoire f.
 short, and entertaining. My clock | does not go | right now.
court m, e f. amusant m, e f. horloge f. ne va pas bien

* See an observation on this 's, which is annexed to p. 73.

III. *Possessive Pronouns do not agree in French with the Possessor, as in English, but with the Gender of the thing possessed, i. e. with the Substantives they are prefixed to;*

E X A M P L E:

The end of his *or* her cane, has spoiled her *or* his hat;
Le bout de sa canne a gâté son chapeau.

P R A X I S.

Take up his *or* her knife. Give him his *or* her fork.

ramassez *couteau m.* *donn* *z* *fourchette f.*

Return her his *or* her book. Hang up her *or* his

rendez *livre m.* *pendre (4)*

hat. Mend her *or* his pen. Clean her *or* his buckles.

chapeau m. taillez

plum. f. nettoyez

boucle f.

IV. *Possessive Pronouns must always be repeated in French before every Substantive, when there are more than one in the same Sentence; likewise they are to be used before Substantives signifying Relation or Friendship, when we speak to them; tho' in these two cases they are generally left out in English;*

E X A M P L E:

Cousin, bring me my coat and waistcoat;
Mon cousin, apportez moi mon habit et ma veste.

P R A X I S.

Uncle shall you be here this evening? Yes, child.

oncle m.

ici

soir m.

enfant m.

Brother, come hither. Do you call sister? I have

frère m.

venez

ici

appelez-vous

sœur m.

lost my friends and relations. Your god-father will

perdu

ami m.

parent m.

parain m.

assist you. His master, mistress, and guardian are dead.

aider

maître m. maîtresse f.

tuteur m.

mort m.

V. *When one of the Possessive Pronouns is before the word sake, it must be rendered into French by the Conjunctive Pronouns that answers to it, after the manner following ;*

E X A M P L E :

For my sake, or for your sake ;
Pour l' amour de moi, ou pour l' amour de vous.

P R A X I S.

Keep it for my sake. Do that for thy sake. Don't tell
gardez fais cela ne dites
 it for his sake. Take it and preserve it for her sake. Pray,
prenez préservez de grace
 stay here an instant for our sake. Let him do it for your
restez ici instant m. fasse
 sake. Go thither for their sake. Assist me for God's sake.
allez y assiste Dieu

Observe—1st, That *mon, ton, son*, which are directed to be used in the second Rule, p. 30, are only introduced for the sake of pronunciation.—2^{dly}. That, when Possessive Pronouns occur before a Substantive, implying a part or faculty of the Body, and preceded by a Verb and a Personal Pronoun, sufficiently denoting whose part or faculty you are speaking of, they are rendered by the first state of the Definite Article, viz. *le, la, l', les* ; Exam. I wash my hands and face every morning, *Je me lave les mains et le visage tous les matins* ; &c. But, if we speak of a part affected with Cold, Heat, Hurt, &c. the particle *in*, set before any of these Pronouns, is to be left out ; and they are resolved by the third State of the Article ; Exam. I have got a pain in my side, *j'ai mal au côté* ; he has got a pain in his head, *il a mal à la tête* ; &c.—3^{dly}. That the Possessive Pronoun *its*, which relates to irrational objects, is elegantly expressed in French by *en*, when it can be resolved in English by *of it*, as in this Example ; This plant is very common, but I don't know its properties, *cette plante est très commune, mais je n'en connois pas les vertus* ; &c.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

I. *Absolute Pronouns are used in French, as in English, to avoid the repetition of a Substantive that precedes them, with which they must agree both in Gender and Number;*

E X A M P L E:

Is that your book? Yes, it is *mine*.

Est ce-là votre livre? Oui, c'est le mien.

P R A X I S.

Your father and mine | are talking | together. I have
père m. parlent ensemble
 lost my seal, lend me yours. Their house is almost
perdu cachet m. prêtés maison f.
 opposite to ours. His lesson is long, but mine is short;
vis-à-vis de leçon f. longue mais court m. e f.
 the king was in his coach and the queen in hers. My
dans carrosse m. reine f.
 business requires more labour and care than yours or his.
profession f. requière travail soin que au

• II. *If the Particle of is set immediately before Absolute Pronouns, they are to be rendered into French by a Possessive;*

E X A M P L E:

A friend of *mine* would be very glad to, &c.

Un de mes amis seroit bien aise de, &c.

P R A X I S.

A kinsman of yours has obtained a pension. Two
parent m. obtenu pension f.
 servants of his robbed him. A scholar of mine has
domestique m. volèrent écolier m.
 learned to write and speak French in four months.
après à écrire à parler en mois m.

III. *When an Absolute Pronoun is preceded by any of the Tenses of the Verb to Be, and a Substantive used in the same sentence, the Absolute Pronoun must be rendered into French by a Conjunctive, with the Particle à (to) prefixed to it;*

E X A M P L E:

This book is mine; *Ce livre est à moi.*

P R A X I S.

This horse was mine, now it is thine. This needle
cheval m. étoit à présent aiguille f.
 is hers. This field was ours, and this meadow is yours.

This house was his, and these trees were theirs.
maison f. pré m. arbre m. étoient

The gun which you have bought of Mr. Smyth was mine,
fusil m. acheté
 before it was his. Is that country-house, near South-
avant que fui maison de campagne f. près de
 ampton, yours or his? If it was mine, I would sell it.
ou si vendre (4)

You may observe—1st. That these Pronouns are sometimes used in French, after the manner of Substantives, but in the masculine Gender only; Exam. Il faut rendre à chacun le sien, we must give every one his due; le mien & le tien sont la source de toutes les divisions, was it not for mine and thine, there would be no divisions; &c. They also figure after the same manner, in the plural Number, to denote a collection of objects; Exam. Nous & les nôtres, we and ours; vous et les vôtres, you and yours; lui et les siens, he and his, &c. 2dly. That, with respect to the second Rule, when such expressions as of mine, of yours, of his, &c. are used indefinitely, they are rendered either by qui and a Conjunctive Pronoun placed after the third person of the Present-tense in the Subjunctive of the verb Etre, or before the same Tense of the verb Appartenir; Exam. I have got nothing of yours, je n'ai rien qui soit à vous, or else je n'ai rien qui vous appartienne; &c. The verb Appartenir may also be introduced in the expressions annexed to the third Rule; as ce cheval m'appartenait; à présent il t'appartient; &c.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. 35

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

This *or* that, *ce* and *cet* m. *cette* f, *sing.*
 These *or* those, *ces* c. *pl.*

1. **T**HE Pronouns *ce* and *cet* are both used for the Masculine Gender, with this difference, that *ce* is always used with words beginning with a Consonant; and *cet* with such words as begin with a Vowel or *h* not aspirated;

E X A M P L E:

In *this* world. With *this* child.
Dans ce monde. Avec cet enfant.

P R A X I S.

This horse trots well. That man talks too loud.
cheval m. trotte parle trop haut.
This table is too wide. These glasses are not clean.
table f. large verre m. net m.
This work | will not be | finished this summer; nor
ouvrage m. ne sera pas fini été m. ni
even the year. That tree is dead. This garden is | kept
même année f. arbre m. mort jardin m.
in good order; | but these walks are too narrow. | These
bien entretenu mais allée f. étroit m., & f.
boys and those girls run faster than that woman. This
garçon m. fille f. courent vite que femme f.
hat is • the Gentleman's, and not yours. That house is
chapeau m. Monsieur non pas maison
Mr. Martin's, and this orchard is his brother's.
verger m. frère m.

* In this and the like expressions, the verb *is* may be rendered either by *est* or by *appartient*; but, whatever verb is made use of in French, the Substantive must always be placed in the third State, that is, with *à* or *de*, &c..

II. *The Pronouns celui m, celle f, (this or that) ceux m, celles f. (these or those) are used in French as in English, to avoid the repetition of the Substantives they relate to;*

E X A M P L E:

The King's coach, and *that* of the Queen;
Le carrosse du Roi, et celui de la Reine.

P R A X I S.

The city of London is bigger and contains more
cité f. Londres grand m, e f. contient
 inhabitants than that of Paris. This house is smaller
habitant m. qua maison f. petit m, e f.
 than that of your brother. He has taken the best apples,
frère m. pris pomme f.
 and has given me those which | are good for nothing | .
donné qui ne valent rien

III. *The Particles ci and là are annexed to the last Pronouns celui, celle, ceux, &c. when we mean to point more particularly at an object, in which case the Substantive is not expressed;*

E X A M P L E:

Your horse is as fine as *this*;
Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui-ci.

P R A X I S.

Eat that apple, and I will eat this. These pears are better
mangerai pomme f. mangerai poire f.
 than those. Virtue and vice produce different effects;
vertu f. vice m. produisent effet m.
 this causes the misery of men, that makes them happy.
cause misère f. rend heureux.
 Here are | my books, but these are good, and those bad.
voici livre m. bon m. mauvais m.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. 37

IV. *The Pronouns this and that, standing for something pointed to, but not named, or serving to indicate objects collectively mentioned, without being expressed, are rendered by ceci and cela ;*

E X A M P L E :

This is more surprising than that ;
Ceci est plus surprenant que cela.

P R A X I S.

That is ^{admirable c.} admirable. This is ^{beau m.} very fine. In saying that, ^{disant} he looked ^{regarda} at me. This will ^{occasionner a} occasion a new law-suit. I ^{procès m.} did not think of that. All that is true. This was ^{pensais à} approved by a few ; ^{tout} but that ^{vrai} displeased the whole company. ^{fut}
approuvé de quelques-uns déplut à compagnie f.

Observe—1st. That ce is also frequently used in French as a Substantive, and even as a whole Phrase, in which circumstance it precedes dont, qui, or que ; Exam. That of which you spoke to me yesterday is done, ce dont vous me parlates hier est fait ; &c.—2dly. That ce is often construed with the verb Etre, in order to denote, in a more concise manner, the possession or peculiarity of things, and is used for both the Singular and Plural Number ; Exam. Est-ce là votre cheval ? is that your horse ? oui ce l'est, yes it is ; sont-ce là vos gants ? are these your gloves ? oui ce les sont, yes they are ; est-ce là, ô Télémaque, les pensées qui &c. are these, Telemachus, the thoughts which &c. TELEM. L. I. For the use of ce, instead of the Pronoun il, with the third Person of any of the Tenses of the verb Etre, as c'est, it is ; &c. see the Rules on Impersonal verbs, p. 82. — Lastly, that these Pronouns icelui m, icelle f, sing. iceux m, icelles f. plur. are only Law terms, which are used to prevent equivocations, but never admitted in another style.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. THE Pronouns *qui* (who, that or which*) and *que* (whom, that or which*) are used for both Numbers and Genders; and with any Substantive whatever;

E X A M P L E S:

The man	}	who	{ sings,	<i>L'homme</i>	}	} <i>qui</i> {	<i>chante.</i>
The woman	}	or	{ cries,	<i>La femme</i>	}		<i>pleure.</i>
The children	}	that	{ laugh,	<i>Les enfans</i>	}		<i>rient.</i>

The sun	}	that	{ warms,	<i>Le soleil</i>	}	} <i>qui</i> {	<i>échaufe.</i>
The moon	}	or	{ shines,	<i>La lune</i>	}		<i>luit.</i>
The stars	}	which	{ sparkle,	<i>Les étoiles</i>	}		<i>brillent.</i>

P R A X I S.

The girl who has bought me this pen-knif, is young,
filie f. achetée canif m. jeune c.
 pretty, and obliging. The boy to whom I was speaking
joli m, e f. obligeante f. garçon m. parlois
 is audacious. The woman whom God formed with
audacieux m. femme f. Dieu forma de
 one of Adam's rib's was the cause of his sin.
côte f. fut cause f. péché m.
 The books which you read are good, but very difficult
livre m. lisez bon très difficile c.
 to understand. I detest those men that are deceitful.
à entendre déteste trompeur m.

* Those Pronouns are to be rendered by *qui*, when they are the Subject of a Verb; and, generally, by *que*, when they are the Object; but when they are preceded by any Particle, such as *of*, *to*, *from*, *with*, *against*, *after*, &c. they are to be rendered by *qui* for rational Beings, or Things personified, as *Providence*, *Fortune*, *Fate*, &c. But, for irrational Creatures, and inanimate objects, by *lequel*, sing. m. &c. and *laquelle*, sing. f. &c.

II. *Though the Relative Pronouns that, which, &c. are sometimes elegantly left out in English, it is not so in French, but must always be expressed where the sense directs their use;*

E X A M P L E :

The wine we drank yesterday was very good;
Le vin que nous bumes hier étoit fort bon.

P R A X I S.

The company he keeps is not honest. The reasons
A compagnie f. fréquente honnête c. raison f.
 you give are not told. The gold watch you see,
donne c. solid c. or m. montre f. voyez
 has cost ninety-five guineas. The exercise you
coûté gainée f. devoir m.
 have given me to write, is too long and too hard for me.
donné écrire trop difficile c. pour

III. *If the Pronoun whose stands for of whom or of which, it is rendered by dont: but, if it should be used interrogatively, you are to render it by à qui (to whom);*

E X A M P L E S :

1. Ferdinand whose courage is known;
Ferdinant dont le courage est connu.
2. Whose beautiful Country-house is this?
À qui est cette magnifique Maison de campagne?

P R A X I S.

The man whose conduct is regular, and whose actions
homme m. conduite f. régulier m, e f.
 are upright, is happier than him who [abandons
honnête c. heureux m. s'aban-
 himself] to his inclinations. Whose children are these?
donne inclination f. enfant m.

IV. *The Pronoun which, used interrogatively before the particle of, is to be rendered by lequel m, laquelle f. &c. If it relates to, or agrees with, a Substantive coming after it, by quel m, quelle f. &c. When used for the Subject of a verb, by qui; and for the object by que. Lastly, if it is preceded by of, it should be resolved by dont c, or duquel m, &c.*

E X A M P L E S:

1. Which of these two pictures do you like best?
Lequel de ces deux tableaux aimez-vous le mieux?
2. That of which they are speaking so often;
Celui dont or duquel ils parlent si souvent.

P R A X I S.

Which of these pens | do you choose to have? | that which is
plume f. souhaitez-vous
 the shortest. Which page | shall I write | upon*? on that
court m, e f. page f. écrivai-je sur
 which is the least dirty. The house of which you | was
sale c. maison f.
 speaking | and which you | wanted to buy | is certainly sold.
parlez voulez acheter vendue

V. *The relative pronoun what is to be rendered by ce qui before verbs used either affirmatively or negatively; by ce que before a personal Pronoun; by que before verbs used interrogatively; by quoi when used singly, and when it is either preceded, or followed by a Particle; and by quel m, quelle f. &c. before a Substantive, according to its gender and number.*

E X A M P L E:

Say what is true, and do what I bid you;
Dites ce qui est vrai, et faites ce que je vous ordonne.

* When a Prepositive particle occurs at the end of a Phrase, relating to the Pronouns *whom, which, or what*, it must be placed before them in French; therefore, this is to be rendered by *sur quelle page, &c.*

qu'est ce que c'est

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

41.

What grieves me is that he | is gone out | without leave.

What * shall I say to his tutor? What we do hastily

is often imperfect. What I say is true. What is it †?

What | were you speaking | of? Do you hear what I say?

What, and what then? What books have you bought?

You are moreover to observe—1st. That, the Pronoun whom is frequently rendered by qui, for brevity sake, in the three following instances; the first, in asking questions relating to one or more Persons; EXAM. Whom do you know in London? Qui connoissez-vous à Londres? for qui est-ce que or qui sont les personnes que &c. The second, when whom comes immediately after a Verb; EXAM. I know whom you mean; Je sais qui vous voulez dire; for je sais qui est la personne que &c. The third, after a Substantive or Con-junctive pronoun, preceded by a Verb; EXAM. Bring with you, or with your brother, whom you please; Amenez avec vous, ou avec votre frère, qui vous voudrez; for quiconque vous voudrez.—2dly. That, as we often part the Relative qui or que from its Antecedent, either for elegance sake, or on account of the length of sentences, a Con-junctive Pronoun is in-troduced before the Relative, in order to preserve the regula-rity of the construction required in this case; EXAM. Il est étonnant que Henri IV. ait péri si malheureusement, par la main d'un de ses Sujets, lui qui ne recherchoit que le bonheur de ses peuples; It is astonishing that Henry IV. should have been so basely killed as he was, by the hand of one of his Subjects; seeing that he had nothing more at heart than

* The best way of rendering this word is by *que*, according to the Rule, yet one may make use of this expression, *qu'est ce que* in this or the like ques-tion, with the verb used affirmatively thus; *Qu'est ce que je dirai?*

† The manner of rendering *what* before the impersonal *it is*, used inter-rogatively, is by *Qu'est ce-que*; EXAM. What is it, *Qu'est-ce que c'est?* &c.

the happiness of his people ; &c.—3dly. The Particles of and to, having, in a Phrase used affirmatively, a reference to the Pronoun what, are to be construed thus ; the first by that of which, and rendered by ce dont, the second by that to which, and rendered by ce à quoi ; EXAM. What he is speaking of, ce dont il parle ; what he applies himself to &c. ce à quoi il s'applique &c.—There being several words, which are usually subjoined to this Part of Speech under the denomination of Indeterminate or Indefinite Pronouns, as may be seen in the Practical French Grammar, p. 90, it is fit that Learners should also take notice of the following general Remarks upon some of them ; viz. Aucun (none, any) generally requires the Particle ne before the Verb it is accompanied with ; as Aucun des témoins ne s'y trouva, none of the witnesses attended there : but, in Sentences of interrogation Aucun is used without ne ; as Y a-t-il aucun de vous qui m'ait blâmé ? is there any of you that has blamed me ? Autrui (others) implies both Genders and Numbers, and is always preceded by de or à ; Exam. N'exposez pas les défauts d'autrui, don't expose the faults of others ; faites à autrui ce que vous voudriez qu'on vous fît, do unto others as you would be done by ; &c. As for nul, personne, and rien, see Observ. 2d. p. 51.—Quelque, and in the plural quelques, preceding a Substantive, is of both Genders, and signifies some or any ; as in the following Examples ; quelque Auteur a dit cela, some Author has said that ; avez-vous quelque espérance de réussir ? have you any hope of succeeding ? &c. But, should the word some or any relate to a Substantive or Pronoun mentioned before, it is englished by en ; see the use of this Particle, p. 123 : and when some happens to be repeated in a sentence, as is the case in the Praxis on R. IV. p. 84, the first is to be rendered by les uns, and the second by les autres ; Exam. Some love one thing, some love another, les uns aiment une chose, les autres une autre ; &c.*

* *Quelque* prefixed to a Substantive, beginning with a vowel. does not admit of an Elision ; therefore it is erroneous to write *quelqu'argent*, &c.,

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS. 43

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Pronouns.

We wish no evil to those we despise, but to those who
souhaitons mal ceux qui méprisons mais
 have a right to despise us. That reasonable creature,
raison de raisonnable créature f.
 | who his called | Man, does many unreasonable things.
qu'on appelle fait déraisonnable
 Man is the only creature whose happiness is imperfect;
seul m, cf. son bonheur m. soit
 and, if we consider him in his present state, he seems born
si considérons dans état m. paraît n. e
 only to multiply his species in this world, and transmit
pour augmenter espèce f. monde m. transmettre
 it to posterity; what great advantage has he then above
postérité f. avantage m. donc au dessus
 the beasts and birds? this; his soul, which is immortal,
des bête oiseau celle-ci âme f. immortel m, le f.
 and capable of acquiring knowledge. As soon as |
acquérir sciences pl. dès que
 Solomon abandoned himself to love, he lost his * reason.
Salomon s'abandonna amour perdit raison f.
 Achilles was invulnerable all over his body, except in
Achille était partout corps m.
 his heel. What is admirable in Peter the Great is not his
talon m. Pierre
 success, but his resolution and travels. They deserve to
succès m. résolution f. voyage m. méritent
 be encouraged, who undertake to serve the public. He
encouragé entreprennent de servir public m.
 who is solicitous to know every satirical expression which
a envie de savoir satirique c.
 is vented against him, | leads a life of anxiety |. Say
lancée contre vit dans l'inquiétude dites
 what is true, do what is just, and be what you appear.
vrai fûtes juste soyez p. n'offez.

* See the 2d observation annexed to the Rules, in p. 32.

RULES for the Construction of VERBS.

THE constant concomitants of a Verb are a *Subject* and an *Object*. The Subject, called by the Latins the *Nominative* of the Verb, is either one or several Substantives or Pronouns, which do what the Verb signifies, placed either before or after the Verb; EXAM. *Horses neigh, Dogs bark, do you hear? is he there? &c.* The Object, called, by the same, the *Case* of the Verb, is the Substantive or Pronoun that depends upon the Verb; EXAM.

God preserves the World;

These words are easily distinguished; for the Subject is *God*, the Verb is *preserves*, and the Object is the *World*.

I. *A personal Verb must be of the same Number and Person* with the Pronoun or Substantive that goes before it;*

E X A M P L E:

I speak, thou sighest, and our friend reads;
Je parle, tu soupies, et notre ami lit.

P R A X I S.

Virtue ^{virtu f.} excelleth ^{supasser (1)} all ^{chose f.} things, ^{avoir (3 ir)} and ^{récompense f.} has its reward in
 itself. We are the children of God, and must
^{être (4 ir)} observe his law. ^{enfant m.} Our happiness ^{Dieu.} depends ^{devoir (4)} on religion.
^{observer (1)} ^{loi f.} ^{bonheur m.} ^{dépendre (4) de}

* Verbs have three Persons in each Number, denoted by the Pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, or *she*, singular; *we*, *you* or *ye*, *they*, plural. Observe that *I* and *we* always denote the first Persons; *thou*, *you* and *ye* the second; *he*, *she*, *they*, and *any Substantive* whatsoever, the third; let their disposition be as it will.

II. *When two Verbs, following each other, have a personal pronoun for their Subject, it is useless to repeat the Pronoun, if they are in the same tense; but should the two verbs be in different tenses, it is necessary to repeat the Pronoun in French;*

E X A M P L E S:

1. We have seen your father, and have invited him;
Nous avons vu votre père, et l'avons invité.
2. I say and will always say, that you are idle;
Je dis et je dirai toujours, que vous êtes oisif.

P R A X I S.

I will go | and see | Mrs. Grantham, and will desire her
aller (1) voir prier (1)
 to come immediately. she loves compliments, and
de sur le champ aimer (1)
 receives them always with pleasure. I have seen Mr.
recevoir (3) avec voir (3 ir)
Durand to-day, and will dine with him on Sunday next.
aujourd'hui diner (1) prochain.

III. *A Verb that has more than one Substantive or Pronoun for its Subject, must be rendered by the Plural Number;*

E X A M P L E:

The King and Queen are in good health;
Le Roi et la Reine sont en bonne santé.

P R A X I S.

Patience and perseverance are virtues often necessary.
patience f. persévérance f. vertu f. souvent nécessaire c.
 Wit and sense are preferable to beauty. Anger, revenge
esprit m. jugement m. beauté f. colère f. vengeance f.
 and obstinency, seem unworthy of a reasonable being.
entêtement m. paraître (3 ir) indigne c. raisonnable c. être m.

IV. If a Verb has for its Subject, Pronouns of different Persons; it must agree with the First Person, rather than with the Second; and with the Second rather than the Third *;

E X A M P L E :

He and I are satisfied ;

Lui et moi nous sommes contents.

C R O Y O I R A X I S.

You and I believe that the happiness of this world consists | in fulfilling | all our religious and civil duties. His

neighbour and I are resolved to go to Scarborough by sea

and to return by land. Steven and you are talking

louder than I. She and they will go to town to-morrow.

V. After Collective Words, such as number, most, &c. followed by a Substantive in the Plural Number, the Verb is generally put in the Plural; but if they come before a Substantive Singular, the Verb is always to be in the Singular;

E X A M P L E S :

1. Most of his friends forsook him;

La plupart de ses amis l'abandonnèrent.

2. Most people do that in France;

La plupart du monde fait cela en France.

* Those who are not versed in the Rudiments of Grammar are to observe, that the quality, and not the accidental disposition, of Pronouns is here alluded to; therefore the Pronoun I always requires the first Person; thou the second; he, she, or it, the third; and so on for the Plural: see *Introduct.* p. vi.

P R A X I S.

A great number of | learned men | maintain that the
nombre m. savans plur. soutenir (2 ir)
 earth turns round the sun; most people are of this
terre f. tourner (1) au-tour du la plupart du monde
 opinion. The generality of men follow their inclinations.
opinion f. plus grande partie f. suivre (4 ir) inclination f.
 A vast quantity | of people went to see Lunardi's balloon.
infinité f. gens pl. aller (1 ir) voir aérostat m.

*With respect to Rule IV. it must be observed that the Con-
 junctive Pronouns moi or toi can never be made the Subject of
 a Verb, whether they are used singly or after a Substantive or
 Pronoun; therefore it would be wrong to say lui et moi som-
 mes contents, and likewise mon Frère et moi croyons &c.
 for the Verb, in such sentences, requires an immediate Personal
 pronoun for its Subject, which is the reason that nous is in-
 troduced in the Example annexed to that Rule: yet the Pro-
 nouns lui and eux may, either conjointly or separately after a
 Substantive, become the Subject of a Verb without the concur-
 rence of a Personal pronoun; Exam. Lui & eux sont allés à
 Paris, he and they are gone to Paris; Mon frère et lui de-
 voient partir ensemble, my brother and he were to set out to-
 gether; &c. As to the last Rule (the V.) Mr. Restaut has
 inserted in his Grammar, p. 168, Paris Edit. that all col-
 lective words require the verb they are the subject of, in the
 plural Number; but our best Writers do not follow this Rule;
 for instance, L'Abbé Millot says, in his Elémens de l'Histoire
 d'Angleterre, in speaking of King Ethelbert's conversion to
 christianity, la plupart de ses sujets suivit son exemple. It
 may not be amiss to observe here, that after these words, aussi,
 ainsi, encore, hélas, peut-être, du-moins, au-moins, en
 vain, and à-peine, the Personal pronoun is usually placed after
 the verb, altho' the phrase implies an affirmation; Exam.
 Aussi suis-je résolu de m'en tenir à mon premier projet,
 therefore I am resolved to abide by my first plan; &c.*

THE CONSTRUCTION

Of VERBS used INTERROGATIVELY.

I. *If the interrogation is made by a Personal Pronoun, the Pronoun is to be placed in French after the Verb**;

E X A M P L E:

Are you sick? Do you speak French?
Etes-vous malade? Parlez-vous François?

P R A X I S.

Do you hear me? Did you see her? Shall you stay
entendre (4) voir (3 ir) r.st.r (1)
 a long time. Have they been punished? Had you
long tems punir (2)
 admonished them before? Do they live in London now?
avertir (2) auparavant demurer (1) à

II. *When there is an Interrogation in the third Person of the singular Number, if the Verb ends with a Vowel, this (-t-) must be put between the Verb and the Pronoun il or elle;*

E X A M P L E:

When will he return from the country?
Quand reviendra-t-il de la campagne?

P R A X I S.

Does he speak French? Will he be with us? Shall he
parler (1) être (4 ir)
 go out? Has he told it you? When will she return to town?
sortir (2 ir) dire (4 ir) quand revenir (2 ir) en
 Does she dance well? Has she ever sung in public?
danser (1) jamais chanter (1)

* We deviate from this rule, with verbs ending with two consonants before *je*, as such a transposition would occasion too disagreeable a sound was it admitted; therefore, instead of *cours-je*, *mens-je*, *perds-je*, &c. in these cases we denote the Interrogation by *est-ce-que*; Exam. *Est-ce-que je cours, &c.*

III. If the Interrogation is not made by a Personal Pronoun, you must place the Subject of the Verb before the Verb, and one of the Personal Pronouns *il, elle*, Sing. or *ils, elles*, Plur. after it, according to the Number and Gender of its Substantive;

E X A M P L E:

Has your brother written his exercise?
Votre frère a-t-il fait son devoir ?

P R A X I S.

Is our supper ready? Has the shoe-maker brought my
souper m. prêt cordonnier m. apporter (1)
 shoes? Are yours made? Do your scholars learn the
soulier m. faire (4 ir) écolier m. apprendre (4 ir)
 irregular verbs by heart? Is this gentleman known? Has
irrégulier m. par cœur monsieur connaître (4 ir)
 Mr. Bell spoken to him? Why is poverty despised?
parler (1) pourquoi pauvreté f. mépriser (1)

With respect to the First Rule of this Section, Learners are to observe, that when an Interrogation is made with the first Person of the Present tense of Verbs of the first Conjugation, or with that of the Preterite of such Verbs as end with an *e* not accented, that *e* is to be changed into an *é* acute, before the Pronoun *je*, for the sake of pronunciation; Exam. Do I speak loud enough? *Parlé-je assez haut?* Had I seen it? *L'eussé-je vu?* Do I dance better than he? *Dansé-je mieux que lui?* &c.—The Auxiliary Verbs, *do, did, shall, will*, &c. which are usually used in answer to an interrogation, must always be rendered into French, as if attended with the verb expressed in the first part of the sentence; EXAM. Will you come to-morrow? *Viendrez-vous demain?* Yes, I will; *Oui, je viendrai*, and not *Oui, je veux*. It is the same with any Person of the Auxiliaries *have* and *am*, standing for a Compound tense expressed in the question to which we answer; EXAM. Have you seen him? Yes, I have; *L'avez-vous vu?* *Oui, je l'ai vu*; &c. In which cases, the verb repeated is also attended by the Substantive or Pronoun it relates to.

OF VERBS used NEGATIVELY.

I. WHEN the Person of a Verb is used Negatively, that is with one of these Negatives, *no**, not, nothing, nobody, never, you are to place *ne* before the Verb, and *pas* or *point*, *rien*, *personne*, or *jamais*, after the Verb;

E X A M P L E:

I have *not* yet learned my lesson;
Je n'ai pas encore appris ma leçon.

P R A X I S.

Don't be surprised, if they are not received kindly to-day.

surpris m, e f.

recevoir (3) poliment

They do not seem concerned with that. Merit is not

paraître (4 ir)

toucher (1)

de

mérite m.

always reward, and vice does not always triumph.

toujours récompenser (1) vice m.

triompher (1)

II. These negative Particles *pas* or *point* may be omitted after the Verbs *oser*, *cesser*, *pouvoir*, and *savoir*; and are usually left out after these two expressions, *que ne* and *si ne*;

E X A M P L E:

I cannot comprehend what he means;
Je ne puis comprendre ce qu'il veut dire.

P R A X I S.

Why don't you go to the play this evening? I

je

aller (1 ir)

comédie f.

soir m.

dare not do it, and I know not for what. If you do not

oser (1)

faire (4 ir)

savoir (3 ir)

pour

si

leave off teasing me, I will certainly complain of you.

cesser (1) de agacer (1)

se plaindre (4 ir)

* See the signification of *no* in the Note annexed to the 99th page of my Grammar.

The following remarks are to be made on the first Rule of this Section, p. 50, viz. 1st—That, in the Present of the Infinitive Mood of Verbs, the Particles *ne pas* are more elegantly used together before it, than in being parted, as they are directed to be with the other Moods and Tenses; Exam. Je vous ordonne de *ne pas* sortir aujourd'hui, I bid you not to go out this day; &c.—2^{dly}. That, after the verbs *se garder* and *prendre garde*, both *ne* and *pas* are to be left out in French; Exam. Gardez-vous de le croire, take heed not to credit him; &c.—As to Rule II. Observe, that besides the four mentioned verbs, after which *pas* or *point* is usually left out, we also generally omit the same Particles in the five following cases, viz.—1st. Before the particle *ni* repeated; Exam. Je ne veux ni de ses présens, ni de ses caresses, I want neither his presents, nor his flatteries; &c.—2^{dly}. After these words, *nul*, *personne*, *rien*; Exam. Nul ne fait cela, no one knows that; *personne* ne doit le faire, nobody ought to do it; *rien* ne s'est fait sans son consentement, nothing was done without his consent; &c. It is necessary to take notice, that *personne* and *rien* are also used in Sentences of interrogation, admiration, or doubt, without any negative Particle; in which sense *personne* signifies any body, or somebody, and *rien* means any thing, or something; Exam. Y a-t-il *personne* en France qui pense comme vous? Avez-vous entendu *rien* de semblable? &c.—3^{dly}. When the particle *but* is rendered by *ne* and *que*, as also after these expressions, *à moins que*, *de peur que*, &c. see p. 94.—4^{thly}. After the Relative pronoun governing the Subjunctive mood; Exam. Est-il quelqu'un qui ne fasse de même?—5^{thly}. After the impersonal verb *il y a* followed by *que*; Exam. Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu; as also before the particle *plus*; Exam. On ne porte plus de cimiers à présent, and before *de* expressing some period of time; Exam. Je ne lui parlerai de quinze jours.—Lastly, after the verbs *Dire* and *Voir*, when the first is followed by *mot*, and the second by *goute*; Exam. Ne dites mot, speak not a word; il ne voit goutte, he cannot see at all; &c.

OF VERBS used with an INTERROGATION and
a NEGATION.

If a Verb is used with an Interrogation and a Negation together, ne is to be placed before the Verb, and pas, or point, rien, personne, &c. after the Pronoun Personal;

E X A M P L E:

Shall you *not* be at home this evening?

Ne serez-vous pas au logis ce soir?

P R A X I S.

Do you hear what I say to you? Has he brought you

entendre (4)

dire (4 ir)

apporter (1)

nothing? Has he not informed you that I have no money?

fait savoir

argent

Is not the duke of B — returned to England? Have

duc m.

revenir (2 ir)

en Angleterre

ne savez

you not seen him? Did you not expect him so soon?

vous (3 ir)

ne le

attendre (4)

vous si tôt

Do you not like to learn French? Has not your father

aimer

apprendre

vous ne

bon a-

ordered you to do it? Are you not convinced of its

commander (1)

de faire

ne est

convaincre (4 ir)

usefulness in all stations of life? Have I not told you, that

utilisé f.

stat m.

ne le

dire (4 ir)

vous

people of almost every station study it now in England?

gens pl.

presque

estudier (1)

en

We also ask a question with a negative after this manner; n'est-ce pas que, especially when we take that for certain which is the object of our enquiry; and want either to be confirmed in it, or have it approved by others; for instance, when I say N'est-ce pas qu'elle est très-jolie, or Elle est très-jolie, n'est-ce pas? She is very pretty, isn't she? I intimate that I think the person spoken of is very pretty, and want to have my opinion approved of, by those to whom the question is addressed.

OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

THESE Verbs differ from others, as to their grammatic form, in being conjugated, in French, with two Pronouns, that is with the personal Pronouns *je, tu, il,* and the Conjunctive Pronouns *me, te, se,* sing. *nous, vous, se,* plur. instead of which, these expressions, *myself, thyself, himself,* and the like, are sometimes used in English; Exam. I hurt myself, *je me blesse*; thou hurtest thyself, *tu te blesses,* &c. But, most frequently omitted, which is the case with many Neuter Verbs; Exam. I walk, *je me promène*, thou walkest, *tu te promènes,* &c. or else *I rise, je me lève,* &c. which verbs are known in Dictionaries, from all others, by having the Pronoun *se* prefixed to the Infinitive; as *se Promener,* to Walk; *se Lever,* to Rise; *s'Abstenir,* to Abstain from; &c. See the Introduction, p. x. wherein a model of their Conjugation is inserted.

I. In rendering the simple Tenses of these Verbs affirmatively or negatively, there is no difficulty; but, in their Compound tenses, you are to use, with the Conjunctive Pronouns, the auxiliary *Etre* (to Be) and not *Avoir*, as in English;

EXAMPLE:

I have walked; I have not walked;
Je me suis promené; je ne me suis pas promené.

P R A X I S.

We went into his apartment; he explained himself in
se rendre (4) *appartement* m. *s'expliquer* (1) en
 two words. You have stopt too soon. They had
mot m. *s'arrêter* (1) *trop* *tôt*
 retired. He will complain of you. He flattered him-
se retirer (1) *se plaindre* (4 ir) *se flatter* (1)
 self too-much. Will you engage to do it this week?
trop *s'engager* (1) *semaine* f.

II. If *Reflective Verbs* are used in the *Imperative Mood* affirmatively, the *Conjunctive Pronouns* *toi, nous, vous*, are to be placed after the *Verb*; but if negatively, *te, se, nous, vous*, must be prefixed to the *Verb*, as the sense requires;

E X A M P L E:

Do walk; Do not walk;
Promenez-vous; Ne vous promenez pas.

P R A X I S.

Amuse yourselves in my room; retire from hence. Let
s'amuser (1) chambre f. se retirer (1) ici
 us rise quickly; let them appear immediately. Do
se lever (1) promptement se montrer (1) sur le champ
 not present yourselves | before my eyes | for the future.
se présenter (1) devant moi à l'avenir.

III. When *Reflective Verbs* are used with an *Interrogation* affirmative, the *Conjunctive Pronoun* is to remain before the *Verb*, and the *Personal Pronoun* to be placed after it*;

E X A M P L E:

Shall I surrender? Does he stop?
Me rendrai-je? S'arrête-t-il?

P R A X I S.

Does he sit down? Will you embark? Did he grow
s'asseoir (3 u) s'embarquer (1) s'aprioi-
 tame? He has grown rich? Is the sky grown dark?
ser (1) s'enrichir (2) ciel m. s'obscurir (2)
 Has he accipped himself? Have you made yourself hoarse?
s'équiper (1) s'enrouer (1)

* In Compound-tenses this order is the same, only the Participle is last; but, if a Substantive is the Subject of a Verb, a Personal pronoun must be placed betwixt the Auxiliary and Participle, as by Rule III. p. 49.

IV. *The same Verbs being conjugated with an Interrogation Negative, take the Particle ne before the Conjunctive Pronouns me, te, se, Sing. nous, vous, se, Plur. and pas, point, &c. after the Personal Pronouns, as other Verbs do ;*

E X A M P L E:
Does he not sacrifice himself?
Ne se sacrifie-t-il pas ?

P R A X I S.
Don't we retire? Does she not stir? Don't your
pulse grow weak? Does not his party gather strength?
Have we not behaved well towards him? Had he not
rebelled against us? Have you not mistaken your way?
se retirer (1) se remuer (1)
pous m. s'affaiblir (2) parti m. se renforcer (1)
se comporter (1) envers
se révolter (1) contre se méprendre (4) ir) de chemin.

Observe 1st.—That there are, in the French language, Verbs which are always used as Reflective, because the Conjunctive pronouns me, te, se; nous, vous, se, are inseparable from them; as *s'Astenir*, to Abstain; *s'Efforcer*, to Endeavour; *s'Ingérer*, to Intermeddle; *se Moquer*, to Deride; *se Repentir*, to Repent; *se Souvenir*, to Remember; &c.—2dly. That the following Neuter verbs are made Reflective with the addition of the Particle en, viz. *s'en Aller*, to Go away; *s'en Retourner*, to Return; *s'Enfuir*, to Run away; *s'Endormir*, to Fall asleep; *s'Envoler*, to Fly away; wherein en is not expressed in English.—3dly. That all Active verbs may be made occasionally Reflective, that is, when they are to express an action that terminates in the Person who acts; as *s'Aimer*, to Love one's self; *se Punir*, to Punish one's self; &c. Reciprocal Verbs admit of the same Construction; see the Practical Grammar, p. 122.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of Verbs.

We must take care not to expose ourselves to danger.
devoir (3) prendre garde* de s'exposer danger m.
 Nobody is screened | against the | aspersions of the wicked.
personne à l'abri des calomnie f. méchant m.
 Drunkenness heightens and discovers every fault one
ivrognerie f. augmenter (1) découvrir (2 ir) faute f. on
 has. Life and death, wealth and poverty, have a great
vie f. mort f. richesses pl. pauvreté f.
 influence over all men. Do we not discover as much lit-
sur autant de
 tleness of mind, when we exult on lucky, as when we
esprit m. se réjouir (2) quand
 despond on unlucky occasions; and make ourselves as
s'affliger (1) malheureux m, se f. se rendre (4) aussi
 ridiculous by gusts of merriment in prosperity, as by floods
ridicule c. excès m. joie dans torrent m.
 of tears in adversity? Often-times the opulent shun and
larme très-souvent riche c. s'éviter (1)
 hate one another, and the wretched seek after each
se haïr (2 ir) misérable c. se rechercher (1)
 other. We ought never to be prepossessed against a
devoir (3) préjudicé m, e f.
 man because he has a forbidding aspect, or an haughty
parceque rebutant fier m; e f.
 air, nor | on account of his being | born in a different
à cause qu'il est naître (4 ir)
 country than ours; but suspend our opinion | of him |
pays m. suspendre (4) à son égard
 until we | are acquainted with | him: for can an honest
jusqu'à ce que connoissance pouvoir (3 ir)
 man be distinguished from a rogue, or a friend from an
distingué m, e f. coquin m. ami m.
 enemy, by the accidents of nature or place?
ennemi m. accident m. nature f. lieu m.

* See the Remarks, in p. 51, on this and the following Phrase.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

I. WHEN two Verbs come together, the latter, if it has no Subject expressed or understood, is to be used in the Infinitive, whether the sign *to* is prefixed to it or not;

E X A M P L E:

Does he pretend *to be* stronger than you?
Prétend-il être plus fort que vous?

P R A X I S.

Is he gone to breakfast? Are * they to dance this evening? Are you to be of the party? Will you introduce me? You seem to hesitate? Can't we go together? Don't you hear me speak? Be pleased to grant me a favour. Can you lend me twenty guineas? I intend to return them to you very soon. Are you willing to do it? You should not spend your time in reading Novels. What do you expect to learn | in them | ?

aller (1 ir) déjeuner (1) devoir (3) danser (1) soir m. partie f. introduire (4 ir) paraître (4 ir) pouvoir (3 ir) ensemble entendre (4) daigner (1) accorder (1) grâces f. prêter (1) guinée f. compter (1) rendre (4) bien-tôt vouloir (3 ir) faire (4 ir) devriez passer à lire roman m. espérer (1) y

* When the Verb *to Be* is used before a Verb in the Infinitive, to denote a futurity in the action of that Verb, it is rendered in French by the Verb *devoir*, used in such Tense and Person as the sense requires; Exam. *He is to come*, Il doit venir; or by the Future tense of the subsequent verb; as *it will come*; &c. But, should it be used to denote a thing to be done instantly, it is construed by the impersonal verb *c'est à*; Exam. *I am to drink*, c'est à moi à boire; *you are to play now*, c'est à vous à jouer à présent; &c.

II. *The Particle to, generally used in English to denote this Mood, is most commonly rendered into French by à, de, or pour, for which take the following directions. . . If after any Tense of the Verb to Have (avoir) followed by a Substantive signifying a thing to be done, or an Adverbial particle expressing what one hopes or fears to do, the Particle to must be rendered by à ;*

E X A M P L E:

Have you got some security to give me?
Avez-vous quelque caution à me donner ?

P R A X I S.

I have no money to lend. He will have many difficulties to overcome, and you many hazards to run.
argent prêter bien des
 We have much to fear. Have you got nothing to do?
surmonter risque m. courir
beaucoup craindre rien faire.

III. *When after any Tense of the verb to Be (être) used personally, follows an Adjective of order, to is to be rendered by à ;*

E X A M P L E:

He is one of the first to encourage it;
Il est un des premiers à l'encourager.

P R A X I S.

I am the first to blame his conduct, and you to praise it; and yet you know very well that he is always the first to contradict you, and to oppose our undertakings.
blâmer conduite f. louer
cependant savoir (3 ir) toujours
contredire opposer entreprise f.

IV. *After the following Verbs, aider, aimer, apprendre, aspirer, attendre, encourager, enseigner, inviter, penser, s'accoutumer, and such as signify an application to something; to is rendered by à, before the next Infinitive;*

E X A M P L E:

She doth learn *to* dance and *to* sing;
Elle apprend à dâncer et à chanter.

P R A X I S.

Masters who use mildness towards their scholars
maître m. user (1) de clémence f. envers écolier m.
 encourage them more to learn, than those who use
encourager (1) plus apprendre
 too much severity. Exhort him to do well. Aspire to
trop de exhorter (1) faire (4 ir) aspirer (1)
 be great. Invite your relation to dine with us to-day.
inviter (1) parent m. dîner

V. *After these Substantives, disposition, inclination, penchant, peine, and the like; also after these and the like Adjectives, aisé, diligent, enclin, prêt, propre, sujet, soigneux; lastly, after adverbial Particles, to is to be rendered by à;*

E X A M P L E:

To have a great inclination *to* travel;
Avoir un grand penchant à voyager.

P R A X I S.

A pupil who is inclined to learn, is always ready to
élève m. enclin m, e f. prêt m, e f.
 receive his master's instructions; he is diligent to study
instruction f. étudier (1)
 his lessons, and careful to make a good use of his time.
leçon f. soigneux faire usage m. tenu DA.

VI. *After these Substantives*, autorité, besoin, bonté, coutume, envie, moyen, pouvoir, raison, tems, volonté, and the like; *also after these Adjectives*, aise, avide, capable, content, &c. as mentioned before, p. 18, Rule X. the Particle to must be rendered by *de* before an Infinitive;

E X A M P L E:

Have you a mind to come along with me?

Avez-vous envie de venir avec moi?

P R A X I S.

Whilst we have time to improve our knowledge, let us
pendant que tems m. augmenter connoissances pl.
 do it. Kings have power to command, and Judges the
pouvoir m. commander juge m.
 authority to condemn; we are obliged to obey them.
autorité f. condamner obligé m, e f. obéir

VII. *After the following Verbs*, accuser, blâmer, cesser, conseiller, craindre, dissuader, jouir, présumer, prier, promettre, tâcher; *s'affliger, se chagriner, se dépêcher, s'efforcer, s'ennuyer, se fâcher, se flatter, s'inquiéter, se repentir, &c.* the Particle to is also to be rendered by *de*;

E X A M P L E:

I pray you to have a little patience;

Je vous prie d'avoir un peu de patience.

P R A X I S.

I advise you to learn that Rule by heart; promise me to do it.
conseiller (1) apprendre règle f. par cœur promettre (4 ir) faire
 Never presume to have more sense than those who instruct
présumer (1) d'esprit instruire (4 ir)
 you; and endeavour to improve, whilst you are at school.
tâcher (1) profiter (1) école f.

VIII. *When we express the end, design or cause, for which a thing is done, if the Particle to can properly be resolved by in order to, it is generally expressed in French by pour;*

E X A M P L E:

I went yesterday to your house *to* see you.

J'allai hier chez vous pour vous voir.

P R A X I S.

I come hither to tell you news. I have written to your

guardian to know it, and I can assure you that he will
 do nothing to disoblige you; on the contrary, he will do
 his endeavours to deserve your confidence and affection.

*venir (2 ir) nouvelles pl. écrire (4 ir)
 tuteur m. savoir (3 ir) pouvoir (3 ir) que
 faire (4 ir) désobliger (1) au-contre
 effort m. mériter (1) confidence f. amitié f.*

It may moreover be observed—1st. That those verbs which require à before them, can commonly be rendered into English by the Participle present with the prepositive particle in; as those, which require de, by the same Participle with one of these Particles, of, from, or with: but if to can be resolved by for with the Participle present, it is, in that case, rendered into French by pour.—2dly. That if a Substantive, Adjective, or Pronoun, is used with assez or trop, in a Phrase implying the end or cause of an action, the Particle to is also to be rendered by pour; Exam. Il faut de l'argent, il n'en a pas assez pour l'acheter; et il est trop fier pour en emprunter; &c. but in other cases the words assez and trop require sometimes de after them; as in this Exam. N'étoit-ce pas assez de l'insulter, sans le battre; and sometimes no Particle at all; Exam. C'est assez or c'est trop me punir; &c. By reading French books, the use of these Particles will be sooner acquired, than by Rules which are liable to many exceptions.

Of the PARTICIPLES.

I. *If either Articles or Possessive Pronouns are or can be used before the Participle present*, which terminates in ing, it ought to be rendered into French by a Substantive;*

E X A M P L E :

The rising of the sun. Shew me your writing;
Le lever du soleil. Montrez moi votre écriture.

P R A X I S :

The frequent thinking | on the | things that concern
fréquent m, e f. considération f. des concerner (1)
 our soul, contributes to the increasing of our happiness.
ame f. contribuer (1) augmentation f. bonheur m.
 Gaming and drinking are often the ruin of young
jeu m. boisson f. souvent ruine f.
 people. His undertaking is too bold. This drawing
gens pl. entreprise f. hardi m, e f. dessin m.
 is none of his doing. The learning of Languages is a
n'est pas façon f. étude f. langue f.
 very hard thing, especially to those who slight Rules.
difficile c. surtout dédaigner (1)
 Our setting off for London, is fixed on Monday next.
départ m. Londres fixé à prochain.

* The Participle present is seldom made use of in French, except *étant* and *ayant*, without being preceded by the Particle *en*; as, *en allant, en parlant, &c.* and, when it is used in this or in any other expression, it never alters its termination; Exam. A woman fearing God, *une femme craignant Dieu*; &c. In some cases, it is better to render this Participle into French by the Pronoun *qui*, and a Tense of the Indicative; as in this Exam. I saw them playing at Tennis, *je les vis qui jouoient à la Paume*; &c. There are however some Participles, which are become Adjectives by use, that alter their termination according to the Gender and Number of their Substantives; such are *amusant m, amusante f*; *charmante m, charmante f*; &c.

II. *The Participle Present (ending in ing) coming after a Verb, or one of these Particles, of, from, with, without*, must be rendered into French by the Infinitive Present;*

E X A M P L E S:

I see him coming. Without bringing it.
Je le vois venir. Sans l'apporter.

P R A X I S.

The providence of God keeps us from perishing, and his
 grace hinders us from acting that which is bad. I am
 never tired of reading (or with reading) French books.

*providence f. empêcher (1) périr (2)
 g. d. e. f. garder (1) faire mal
 las m, se f. lire livre m.*

III. *If this Participle is preceded by the particle in, it is also resolved into French by the Infinitive Present, and is rendered by à; but this is not so certain a Rule as the last. If the Particle by is prefixed to it, you are to construe it by en, with the Participle Present in French as in English;*

E X A M P L E:

You spend too much time in reading Novels;
Vous passez trop de tems à lire des Romans.

P R A X I S.

The greatest wisdom of man consists in knowing his
 failings, and guarding against them. Masters improve them-
 selves by teaching their Scholars, and they by studying.

*sagesse f. consister (1) connaître
 défaut m. prévenir s'instruire (4 in)
 enseigner (1) écolier m. eux étudier (1)*

* But, being preceded by *after* or *for*, it is resolved by *avoir* with the Participle Preterite; Exam. *After beating me, &c. après m'avoir battu.*

IV. *When after the auxiliary Verb to Be follows the Participle Present, the Auxiliary ought not to be expressed in French, but the Participle must be rendered by the same Tense, Number, and Person of its own Verb, as the Auxiliary is in;*

E X A M P L E :

When he was speaking. We were looking.
Quand il parloit. Nous regardions.

P R A X I S.

Those that are wasting their time and spending their
employer (1) sems m. dispenser (1)
 money in idle pursuits, will be lamenting one day or an-
argent m. à frivole c. occupation f. lamenter (1)
 other their folly. A diligent boy is endeavouring to excel.
folie f. gargon m. tâcher (1) exceller (1)

V. *Participles of the Preterite are sometimes declinable, that is to say, admit of a Gender and Number, and sometimes not: they are declinable when used as Adjectives; whether they are preceded by any of the Tenses of the Verb Etre, or not;*

E X A M P L E :

The Fleet destined for B. is composed of 20 ships;
La Flotte destinée pour B. est composée de 20 vaisseaux.

P R A X I S.

In war time many places are taken and retaken by arms.
guerre f. plusieurs c. prendre (4 ir) par arme f.
 Some towns are given up and restored by treaties, and
ville f. délivrer (1) rendre (4) traité m.
 families ruined, though very few | are the better for it | .
ruiner (1) quoique peu s'y enrichissent.

VI. *The Participle Preterite is not declinable when the preceding Substantive or Pronoun is not its immediate object, but that of the verb which generally follows the Participle;*

E X A M P L E:

The rule which I have *begun* to explain;
La règle que j'ai commencé à expliquer.

P R A X I S.

The language which your friends have recommended
langue f. ami m. recommander (1)
 you to learn is very useful. The books which your
apprendre (4 ir) utile c. livre m.
 Aunt has order'd me to buy are instructive, and those
Tante f. ordonner (1) acheter (1) instructif m.
 which she has desired you to read are very entertaining.
prier (1) lire (4 ir) amusant m, e f.

The Substantive règle is, in the example annexed to this last Rule, the immediate Object of expliquer, and not of commencé, as may be proved by transposing the words thus; j'ai commencé à expliquer la règle; whereas in this, l'histoire que je vous ai donnée à étudier, the Object of the Participle donné is l'histoire, and ought to agree in Gender and Number with it; for one might say, je vous ai donné l'histoire à étudier, &c. But, when this Participle is followed by the Present of the Infinitive Mood, and preceded by any Tense of the verb Avoir, it remains invariable; therefore we say l'histoire que je vous ai vu étudier, and not vue. The Participle preterite should agree with the conjunctive Pronouns, le, la, les, prefixed to the Auxiliary Avoir, when they may be construed as the immediate Objects of it; Exam. Je l'ai vue, et je lui ai parlé (in speaking of a woman), je les ai vus, et je leur ai parlé (in speaking of men). ¶ The Participles, agi, été, fallu, pu, and voulu, are always invariable.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the Rules for the Construction of the Infinitive Mood.

Censure is a tax which a man must expect to pay to the
 censure f. taxe f. devoir (3) s'attendre (4)
 public, if he strives to be eminent; it is a folly to think
 tâcher (1) c'est / folie f. penser (1)
 of escaping it. Criticism should be considered as useful,
 à éviter (1) critique f. devoir considérer (1) utile c.
 when it serves to rectify errors, or tends to improve
 quand servir (2 ir) rectifier (1) erreur f. tendre (4) éclairer (1)
 judgment. The desire of appearing generous often
 jugement m. désir m. paraître (4 ir) souvent
 renders us lavish. The mind, by extending and repeating
 rendre (4) prodigue c. en étendre (4 ir) répéter (1)
 the effects of duration, without ever reaching the end,
 effet m. durée f. jamais atteindre (4 ir) fin f.
 is acquiring the idea of eternity. Peter the first, after
 acquérir (2 ir) idée f. éternité f. Pierre
 having civilized himself, had no great trouble to civi-
 se civiliser (1) eut beaucoup de peine
 lize his savages, but the difficulty laid in civilizing
 sauvage m. difficulté f. consistoit à
 himself; for first, he was to acknowledge himself a
 d'abord se reconnoître (4 ir)
 barbarian, to confess it in the face of all Europe, and
 barbare m. avouer (1) en face
 acquire the means of shaking off his barbarity; 2dly,
 acquérir (2 ir) se faire de férocité f.
 he had to learn the difficult science of quitting a
 apprendre (4 ir) science f. quitter (1)
 throne to sink to the low state of the most abject
 trône m. se réduire (4 ir) état m. vile c.
 mechanic, and of laying aside a tottering crown
 artisan m. déposer (1) chancelant m, e f.
 without losing it. Charles XII. lost his time, in con-
 perdre (4) à con-
 quering; and Peter I. employed his, in learning to govern.
 quérir (2 ir) employer (1) gouverner (1)

CONSTRUCTION of the TENSES of the
INDICATIVE.

I. **T**HE Present Tense is used in French as in English, to express the doing of an action at a time present;

E X A M P L E:

You give yourself too much trouble;
Vous vous donnez trop de peine.

P R A X I S.

Evil company corrupts good manners. Wicked men
compagnie f. corrompre (4 ir) mœurs f. méchant m.
think that those who do no harm have no wit. Learning
s'imaginer (1) faire (4 ir) mal m. esprit m. savoir m.
supports conversation, and candour preserves its freedom.
soutenir (1) candeur f. préserver (1) liberté f.

II. The Imperfect Tense is used in French, to express the Continuation of an action past and interrupted by another; and likewise to denote Habits, Conditions, and Situations;

E X A M P L E:

I was writing, when you arrived;
J'écrivois quand vous arrivâtes.

P R A X I S.

We were speaking of you, when you came in. Pray, what
parler (1) quand entrez (1) de grâce
was you saying of me? What did Mr. R — say? He
dire (4 ir) Monsieur
said that when you was young, you | was fond of |
lorsque jeune c. aimer (1)
hunting and dancing, and that you dislike them both now.
chasse f. dance f. que (1 ir)

III. *The Imperfect is also used in French, when we speak of the age, inclinations, and qualities of any Person;*

E X A M P L E:

George III. *was* 22 years *old* at his accession;

George III. *avoit* 22 *ans* à son *avènement*.

P R A X I S.

Charles XII. *was* the Alexander of the North. Richelieu

breathed haughtiness and vengeance. Mazarine *was*

respirer (1) *hauteur* f. *vengeance* f. *Mazarin*
pliant, but sought to enrich himself, by indirect means.
souple c. *chercher* (1) *s'enrichir* (2) *indirect* m, e f. *voie* f.

IV. *The Preterite is chiefly used in historical relations, to denote either past, intervening, or subsequent actions, implying no Habits, inclinations, nor qualities, &c. and is often determined by an adverbial Particle of the time past;*

E X A M P L E:

I *saw* the King and Queen yesterday;

Je vis hier le Roi et la Reine.

P R A X I S.

After the emperor Julius Cæsar had conquered England,

après que *empereur* m. *Jules Cæsar* *conquérir* (2 ir)
he built the tower of London; he continued not in Lon-

bâtir (2) *tour* f. *Londres* *rester* (1) à

don, but appointed rulers in his stead, and retired.

établir (2) *gouverneur* m. *place* f. *se retirer* (1)

Edward III. took Calais | on the | 3d of August, 1347.

Edouard *prendre* (4 ir) *le* *mois*

V. *The Future Tense denotes a time not yet come, and, generally speaking, admits of a literal construction in French;*

E X A M P L E:

We shall soon see what he *will do*;
Nous verrons bien-tôt ce qu'il fera.

P R A X I S.

I shall go to-morrow into the country. You will
aller (1 ir) demain à campagne
 forget all your French. Not at all, for I shall not stay
oublier (1) Français m. point du tout rester (1)
 a long while. Shall you not carry books with you?
temps m. porter (1) livre m.
 I am in hopes | that you will not set off this week.
espérer (1) partir (2 ir) semaine f.

It must be observed—1st. That when the Future Tense is used in English, conjointly with the Present Tense negatively, the French verb must be in the Present of the Subjunctive with que before it; Exam. I don't believe he will go thither, je ne crois pas qu'il y aille; &c.—2dly. That this Tense (the Future) must be used in French, tho' the Present Tense is made use of in English with several conjunctive Particles, such as when, as, so long as, after, &c. Exam. When you have done this Exercise, you may go and play, quand vous aurez fait ce Devoir, vous pouvez aller jouer; but, these and the like expressions, will be taken notice of, in their respective place.—3dly. That, on the contrary we use sometimes, in familiar discourse, the Present Tense instead of the Future, Exam. I shall come again, je vais revenir, for je reviendrai; the like form of speech is even used with words denoting Futurity; Exam. He will set off soon for Paris, il part dans peu pour Paris, instead of il partira dans peu; I shall be with you in a moment, je suis à vous dans un moment; &c.

CONSTRUCTION of the TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

I. **T**HE Present Tense of the Subjunctive is to be used in French with the second verb, when the first is employed interrogatively or negatively; but, in either case, the first must always be followed by the Particle *que**; we use it also after the Pronouns *qui* and *que*, preceded by a Superlative;

E X A M P L E S :

1. Do you believe he *can* prove it?
Croyez-vous qu'il puisse le prouver ?
2. I do not say that he *is* a liar;
Je ne dis pas qu'il soit menteur.
3. He is the greatest prattler (that) *I know*;
C'est le plus grand babillard que je connoisse.

P R A X I S.

Do you think that Mr. B—— is in the wrong? I cannot
croire (4 ir) avoir (3 ir) tort pouvoir (3 ir)
 declare that I have heard it. The best thing he can do,
déclarer avoir dire chose f.
 is to conceal *himself* for two or three weeks. The
c'est de se cacher pendant ou semaine f.
 emperor *Antoninus's* conduct was admirable, and he is
empereur m. conduite f.
 | rank'd among the | greatest princes that have ever reigned.
du nombre des prince m. jamais régner (1)

* This Tense is moreover used—1st. after most Impersonals followed by either *que* or *qui*, and such Conjunctive Particles as are mentioned in p. 94, R. III.—2dly, in sentences that imply a surprise, a wish, or an imprecation.

II. *The Imperfect of the Subjunctive denotes a thing that would, should, or could be, at the present time, supposing certain conditions; and it is used in French as in English, except after the Particle if (si*), in which case it ought to be rendered into French by the Imperfect of the Indicative;*

E X A M P L E:

We should be happy if you would come;
Nous serions heureux si vous veniez.

P R A X I S.

If you would take pains, your friends would love you.

If he should find him at home, what could he say to him? If she would apply herself. I asked him whether

he would come, and I assured him that we should receive him kindly, if he would give us that satisfaction.

prendre (4 ir) ami m. aimer (1) trouver (1) au logis dire (4 ir) s'appliquer (1) demander (1) si venir (2 ir) assurer (1) que recevoir (3) gracieusement donner (1) satisfaction f.

III. *The Preterite of the Subjunctive Mood has a mixed signification; for it alludes sometimes to a time past, and sometimes to a time to come; in the latter sense it is, or may be, englished by would or should; but when it serves to denote a time or action past, it is in the Preterite of the Indicative; however, in both cases the Particle que, or some Conjunctive Particle ending in que, must always precede it in French;*

* But, when the Particle *si* stands for *whether*, then this Tense is used in French as well as in English. Exam. I know not whether you could have patience to do it—*Je ne sais si vous auriez la patience de le faire; &c.*

E X A M P L E S:

1. It was to the end you *should* employ him;
C'étoit afin que vous l'employassiez.
2. He told it me before he *was* taken;
Il me le dit avant qu'il fût pris.

P R A X I S.

I have always loved you before you came so idle. Al-
toujours aimer (1) avant que devenir (2 ir) quoi-
 though queen Elizabeth loved the earl of Essex, she
que suffered that he should be beheaded. *Caligula* ordered
permettre (4 ir) décapiter (1) ordonner (1)
 that the Romans should pay him divine honours.
Romains rendre (4) divin m. bonneur m.

IV. *These auxiliary Verbs, may, should, would, could, and might, are not always signs of the Subjunctive Mood, nor will of the Future-tense; for they must be rendered by a distinct verb, when they have an Emphasis laid on them;*

E X A M P L E:

If I *would* go out, he *could* not hinder me:
Si je voulois, sortir, il ne pourroit m'en empêcher.

P R A X I S.

Scholars may play, when their masters have given them
écouter m. jouer (1) maître m.
 leave; but they should never prefer pleasure to study.
permission f. devoir (3) préférer (1) étude f.
 Would you be happy? shun vice, and practise virtue.
vouloir (3 ir) éviter (1) pratiquer (1)

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the
IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I. *THIS Mood, which admits of no Tense either in English or French, is used to command, intreat, give consent, or forbid; and because one does not direct any of these actions to himself, it wants the first person in the singular number;*

E X A M P L E:

Fear God, and honour your parents;
Craignez Dieu, et honorez vos parens.

P R A X I S.

Go | from me | to Mrs. Smith's*, give her this letter, and
de ma part chez lettre f.
 bring, me an answer. Do not be mistaken, and make
réponse f. se méprendre (4 ir)
 haste to come back. Let us finish our work. Let him
se dépêcher (1) revenir finir (2) ouvrage m.
 speak, if he requires it. Let her go out now. Let us
exiger (1) sortir (2 ir) se
 walk into the garden. Let them come in. Employ
promener (1) dans jardin m. entrer (1) employer (1)
 the first part of your life with the Dead, the second
partie f. vie f. avec mort m.
 with the Living, and the last with yourself. Mind me,
vivant m. dernier m, e f. croire (4 ir)
 forget all that's past, and let us now live good friends.
oublier (1) ce qui vivre (4 ir)

* This s is no more to be taken notice of in French, than the words *boufe* or *bome*, should either of them be annexed to this or any other proper name, which is often the case in such expressions: see p. 91, Rule V.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the Rules for the Construction of the four Moods.

A good subject ought to love and respect his king.
sujet m. devoir (3) aimer respecter roi m.
 The generality of men employ the first part of life in
plupart f. employer (1) partie f. à
 making the other miserable. The Romans kept always
rendre (4) misérable c. Romain m. entretenir (2 ir)
 the sacred fire in the temple of *Vesta*; for, they looked upon
sacré m. feu m. temple m. car regarder (1)
 its extinction as an omen of a public disaster. Alexander
présage m. désastre m. Alexandre
 does not appear so glorious for having conquered the
paraître (4 ir) conquérir (2 ir)
 Indians, as for having refrained from forcing *Darius's*
Indiens m. que se tenir (2 ir) forcer (1)
 fair daughters, who were his captives. One of the
fille f. captive f.
 advantages, we can gather from virtue, is that of
avantage m. pouvoir (3 ir) tirer vertu f.
 making our mind invincible against the attacks of
rendre (4) esprit m. contre attaque f.
 fortune. When Zeno was told* that all his goods were
fortune f. Zénon dire (4 ir) bien m.
 lost, well then, said he, Fortune has a mind to make
hé bien dire (4 ir) envie rendre
 me a philosopher. Good people suffer many incon-
philosophe gens f, pl. incon-
 veniences in this world; let not misfortunes deject you.
venient m. monde m. malheur m. bagner (1)
 Fear not the satire of a coxcomb; flatter him, and you
craindre (4 ir) satire f. fat m. flatter (1)
 | are safe. | Do not covet wealth, but try to get esteem.
en serez exempt. richesses pl. acquérir (2 ir)

* This verb is to be used in the Active voice, with the Particle *on* for its Subject, thus; *quand on eut dit à Zénon, &c.* See the use of *on*, p. 117.

RULES for the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

By the word *Government* is meant the *State* of the Substantive or Pronoun such a verb requires after it, which is expressed in French by either an Article or Particle; and if it is an Article, it must always agree in Gender and Number with the Substantive governed; whence, that Substantive or Pronoun is, properly speaking, the *Object* of the governing Verb, which expression corresponds with that, which is called, by those who have endeavoured to model the Rudiments of the French tongue, on those of the Latin language, the *Case* of the Verb. Observe, that here no notice is taken of those Verbs that have the same Government in both languages.

I. **W**HEN, after the Auxiliary verb *Avoir*, a Substantive follows without an Article, that Substantive is to be used in the second State, that is, with *du, de la, &c.*

E X A M P L E:

I have scholars that have wit;
J'ai des écoliers qui ont de l'esprit.

P R A X I S.

A man that has wit and no* conduct is despicable. I
homme m. esprit m. conduite méprisable c.
 prefer a poor, ignorant, and pious man, to him that hath
pauvre c. pieu-x m, se f.
 learning and no religion. Those that have riches, and
savoir m. qui richesses pl.
 no charity for the poor, are certainly worse than beasts.
charité certainement que bête f.

* This negative particle, before a Substantive, is rendered by *point de*.

II. *The Auxiliary Verb Etre, when it implies Possession or Duty, and other Verbs used impersonally, require the third State after them; that is, à before the Pronoun, or au m, à la f, sing, &c. prefixed to the Substantive they govern;*

E X A M P L E:

It is your duty to reprimand him;
C'est à vous à le réprimander.

P R A X I S.

It is the duty | of kings to defend their subjects, and
c'est *roi m.* *à défendre* *sujet m.*
 the duty | of the subjects to serve their king. Give
c'est *à servir* *leur*
 unto Cæsar that which is Cæsar's, and to God that
à Cæsar ce qui Dieu
 which is God's. It concerns parents and masters to exhort
importe parent m. d'exhorter
 children to virtue, and it becomes children to practise it.
vertu f. convenir (2 ir) de pratiquer

III. *Verbs active* require the Substantive or Pronoun, which is their object, in the first State; but if they are attended by two Substantives or Pronouns, that which expresses the end of the action is to be placed in the third State;*

E X A M P L E:

To teach somebody something;
Enseigner quelque chose à quelqu'un.

* Verbs used in a passive sense, and followed by either *from* or *by*, require *de* or *par* after them in French; but if they are followed by *with*, they require *de*. Exam. He is esteemed by them, *il est estimé d'eux*; he was attended with two servants, *il étoit accompagné de deux domestiques*; &c.

P R A X I S.

Mr. Pratt has given your brother a gold watch, and I will
donner (1) frère m. montre f.
 send him a ring. Present this book to your sister, and
envoyer (1) bague f. présenter (1) livre m. sœur f.
 deliver this note to her father. I have taught two of
délivrer (1) billet m. père m. enseigner (1)
 your relations, French, Italian, Geography, and History.
parent m. François m. Italien géographie f. histoire f.

IV. *The Substantive* or Pronoun that is the object of any of these Verbs, Mourir (to Die) Languir (to Languish) Blamer (to Blame) Avoir pitié (to Have pity on or to Pity) Médire (to Slander) must be used in the second State, that is, with du m, de la f, des c, pl. prefixed to them; or the Prepositive particle de either before a Pronoun or an Adjective;*

E X A M P L E:

Many die in Turkey with the plague;
Plusieurs meurent de la peste en Turquie.

P R A X I S.

Every one blames you for your negligence, and your
chacun m. négligence f.
 ignorance. I have no pity on the misery of those,
ignorance f. misère f.
 who being young and strong choose rather to beg from
jeune c. fort m. aimer (1) mieux — mendier (1)
 door to door than to work; but I pity the blind.
porte en de mais aveugle c.
 My brother died of a fever, which he caught in America.
frère m. fièvre f. attraper (1) Amérique.

* This Rule relates to such Substantives, as have an Article prefixed to them in English; for, if they are preceded by a Prepositive particle only, *de* is to be used instead of the second State, as in this Example, *More people die with Excess, than thro' Want; Plus de gens meurent d'excès, &c.*

V. *The Object of the following Verbs, se Souvenir, se Réjouir, se Lasser, se Moquer, se Railler, se Venger, must also be placed in the same State, that is, in the second;*

E X A M P L E:

Do you remember the promise which you made me?

Vous souvenez-vous de la promesse que vous me fîtes?

P R A X I S.

I rejoice at the good success you have had in your business.

se réjouir (2)

succès m.

dans

affaires pl.

Do you remember the sum of money I lent you a year ago.

se souvenir (2 ir)

somme f.

prêter (1)

il y a

A fool laughs at | every thing. | Pirrhus, to revenge the

foi m. se moquer (1)

tout

se venger (1)

death of his father Achilles, killed Priamus and Polites.

mort f.

Achille

tuer (1)

Priame

Polite.

VI. *The Object of any of these Verbs, Accorder, chercher, conseiller, convenir, deffendre, donner, plaie, nuire, rendre, is to be placed in the third State, that is, must be preceded by the Article au m, &c. if a common Substantive; or the Particle à if a Proper name, or a Pronoun adjective;*

E X A M P L E:

We should endeavour to please our Superiors;

Nous devrions tâcher de plaie à nos Supérieurs.

P R A X I S.

An honest man does not seek to hurt | any body. |

bonnête c.

chercher (1)

nuire

personne f.

Musick pleases my sister vastly. Play does not suit every

musique f. plaie (4 ir)

beaucoup

jeu m.

convenir (2 ir)

age. Learning gives | old people | much comfort. Have

âge m. savoir m.

vieilles gens pl.

beaucoup de

you returned Mr. Trueman's son, what he had lent you.

rendre (4)

filz m.

prêter (1)

VII. The following Verbs require their Object in the third State, that is, *au m*, *à la f*, &c. before a Substantive, and *à* before a Possessive, but not a Conjunctive Pronoun * ; viz.

<i>Aboutir,</i>	<i>Payer,</i>	<i>s' Accoutumer.</i>
<i>Aplaudir,</i>	<i>Penser,</i>	<i>s' Amuser.</i>
<i>Commander,</i>	<i>Persuader,</i>	<i>s' Attacher.</i>
<i>Compatis,</i>	<i>Promettre,</i>	<i>se Disposer.</i>
<i>Contrevenir,</i>	<i>Pourvoir,</i>	<i>s' Exposer.</i>
<i>Devoir,</i>	<i>Prétendre,</i>	<i>se Fier.</i>
<i>Insulter,</i>	<i>Renoncer,</i>	<i>s' Occuper.</i>
<i>Obéir,</i>	<i>Résister,</i>	<i>s' Oposer.</i>
<i>Pardonner,</i>	<i>Ressembler,</i>	<i>se Soumettre.</i>

E X A M P L E:

Abraham obeyed the Lord's voice.

Abraham obéit à la voix du Seigneur.

P R A X I S.

We ought to obey not only our parents, but also our
devoir (3) *obéir (2)* *seulement* *mais aussi*
 superiors. I owe your uncle some money, but I have
supérieur m. *devoir (3)* *oncle m.* *argent m.*
 promised my friend F— to pay him what he has lent me.
promettre (4 ir) *payer (1)* *prêter (1)*
 I applaud the proposal, but cannot give up my right.
applaudir (2) *proposition f.* *renoncer (1)* *droit m.*
 Can't you persuade your guardian to send you to school?
pouvoir (3 ir) *persuader (1)* *tuteur m.* *de envoyer* *école f.*

* The Conjunctive Pronouns corresponding with the third State, may be found at p. 26, in the 1st. 3d. 4th. and 6th. Observation; but they do not admit, in this case, of the Particle *à* in French, as Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns do, even when they have another Particle after them;
 EXAM. I forgive him, (write) *je lui pardonne*, not *je pardonne à lui*, &c.

VIII. *The Verb Jouer (to Play) has two different Governments; viz. the second and the third State; when we speak of musical instruments, it requires the second, viz. du m, de la f, &c. before a Substantive, and de before a Pronoun; but if it implies Gaming, the third State, viz. au m, &c. prefixed to Substantives, and à before Pronouns;*

E X A M P L E:

He plays *on the fiddle*, and she plays *at cards*.

Il joue du violon, et elle joue aux cartes.

P R A X I S.

I do not like to play at games of chance, as at dice, &c.

aimer (1) jeu m. hasard m. dez m.

but I like to play sometimes at bowls, at tennis, or at

quelquefois boule f. jeu de paume m.

nine-pins. Can you play on any instrument? I play

quilles pl. savoir (3 ir) quelque c.

on the flute, on the base-viol, and on the harpsichord.

flûte f. basse de viole f. clavecin m.

From the foregoing Rules, it appears that you are not to use the same State in French after two Verbs, tho' joined together in the same Sentence by the Particle *et*, that differ in their government, as is frequently the case in English; as for instance, mind the following Example, which relates to the third Rule of this Section, p. 76; I love and am loved by the Master; which might be translated in French thus; *j'aime le Maître, et je suis aimé du Maître*: but to avoid the repetition of *maître*, it is better to say and write *j'aime le Maître, et j'en suis aimé*; I love the Master, and am loved by him. This observation is likewise applicable to all the preceding Rules on the Government of Verbs, which, tho' liable to some exceptions, as all general Rules are, may, mostly, be depended upon by such Learners as have not the assistance of a skilful Teacher.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Government of Verbs.

A man who has riches, power, and generosity, can
homme m. richesses pl. pouvoir m. générosité f.
 make others happy. We ought never to rejoice at others
vendre (4) heureux m. devoir (3) se réjouir (2)
 misfortunes, nor deride the poverty of | any body. | If you
malheur m. se moquer (1) personne f. fi
 are insulted, consider that it becomes a noble soul not to
insulter (1) convenir (2 ir) ame f.
 revenge an injury, but to forgive the aggressor, and
se venger (1) injure f. pardonner (1)
 even pity him. Charitable men think of the needy,
même charitable c. penser (1) pauvre c.
 and delight to relieve them. To oppose the Magistrates
se plaire (4 ir) soulager s'opposer (1)
 is to hurt society. ~~X~~ Nothing displeases an honest man | so
c'est société f. déplaire (4 ir) tant
 much as | to hear a person slander another. Who is so
que de médire (4 ir) assez
 happy | as to | please all, and be envied of none? *Ulysses*,
pour envier (1) personne
 crossing the sea of Sicily, commanded his sailors to stop
traverser (1) mer f. commander (1) matelot m. se bou-
 their ears with wax, and | caused himself to be tied | on
cher (1) de se fit attacher au
 the mast of his ship, to resist the charms of the Syrens.
mat vaisseau m. résister (1) charme m. Sirène f.
 The Athenians were displeased with *Simonides*, be-
Athéniens mécontent m. par-
 cause he talked too loud. The Thebans accused *Panni-*
ceque Thébains Pan-
culus for spitting often: the Carthaginians spake ill of
ni. ule cracher (1) souvent Carthaginois parler (1)
Hannibal, because he appeared, in public, open-breasted;
parceque déboutonné
 and others laughed at Cæsar, because he was ill girt.
se moquer (1) Cæsar ceint.

82 THE CONSTRUCTION

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of the IMPERSONAL VERBS *It is, There is, and Must.*

THE Impersonal Verb, *it is, it was, &c.* may be rendered by *il est, c'est, il fait, il vaut, and il faut*; but, as these expressions are not to be indifferently used, the Learner is to observe the following Directions; *viz.*

I. *The Impersonal it is, it was, &c. must be rendered into French by c'est, c'étoit, ce fut, &c. before a Substantive, either single or joined with an Adjective; also before Articles, Pronouns, an Infinitive, and Adverbial Particles.—But with these two Substantives, tems time, heure hour or clock, used without an Article, and Adjectives alone, the same Verb is to be rendered into French by il est, il étoit, il fut, &c.**

E X A M P L E :

It is a good discourse. Is it true that you—&c.
C'est un bon discours. Est-il vrai que vous—&c.

P R A X I S.

It is very lamentable to see men | of excellent parts |
 prone to vice. ^{triste c.} It is a great satisfaction ^{voir (3 ir)} to parents ^{d'esprit} to have
 dutiful children; it is ^{enclin m.} fit ^{vie m.} to correct ^{grand m, e f.} them, ^{parent m.} when they are
 idle and stubborn; it is ^{obéissant m.} love ^{bon} and ^{corriger (1)} reason ^{quand} that prescribe it.
 It is late, ^{entêté m.} and it is time ^{amour m.} to get up; ^{raison f.} for it is seven o'clock. ^{ordonner (1)}
 tard ^{se lever} ^{heure}

* We sometimes say, in a familiar conversation, *c'est vrai*, that is true; *c'est impossible*, that is impossible; *c'est bon*, &c. but in these, and the like, expressions *c'est* is not used as an impersonal verb, because *ce* relates to something spoken of before; and certainly is a contraction of *cela*.

* II. This impersonal Verb is rendered by *il fait, il fesoit, &c.* when we speak of the Weather and its dispositions, and before these Substantives, *jour, nuit, soleil, vent; but by il vaut, &c.* before the Adverbial Particle *mieux* (better);

E X A M P L E:

It is the finest weather in the world;
Il fait le plus beau tems du monde.

P R A X I S.

It is hotter in France than here? It is warmer *there* in
chaud en que il y chaud
 summer, but colder in winter. What weather is it this
été m. froid hiver m. tems m.
 morning? It is dirty; and it was very windy yesterday.
matin m. crotté grand vent hier
 It is better to be alone, than with bad company.
seul m, c f. en compagnie f.

III. After the same impersonal Verb, this expression one's self is to be rendered by the Pronoun *se*; and the Participle present, following it, is to be placed in the Present Infinitive;

E X A M P L E:

It is deceiving one's self, to rely on futurity;
C'est se tromper, que de compter sur l'Avenir.*

P R A X I S.

It is making one's self ridiculous. It was exposing one's
rendre ridicule c. exposer
 self | too much. | Is it not forgetting one's self greatly? Is it
trop oublier beaucoup
 not behaving one's self as a child, to act as you do?
comporter en que d'agir faire (4 ir)

* It is an idiom of the French Language to make use of *que de* in expressions of this sort; that is, when the Participle of a verb, either reflexive or not, immediately follows any Tense of the Impersonal *Etre*, and that another verb, in the Infinitive, begins the second part of the Sentence.

IV. *The Impersonal it is, &c. followed by the Particle with, is to be rendered into French by il en est, &c. with the Article du, de la, des, according to the Gender and Number of the subsequent Substantive; or with de before a Pronoun;*

E X A M P L E:

It is with Poetry, as it is with Painting;
Il en est de la Poësie, comme de la Peinture.

P R A X I S.

It is with the diseases of the heart, as with those of the
maladie f. cœur m.
 body; | some of them | are real, and some imaginary. It
corps m. les unes réel m. le f. imaginaire c.
 will be with you, as it was with your predecessor. In Spain
prédécesseur m. Espagne
 and Portugal, it is with politics, as with religion; for
affaires d'état pl. car
 no one | is to interfere with them | but their ministers.
personne ne doit s'en mêler que ministre m.

V. *The impersonal Verb there is, there was, &c. tho' used in English in both Numbers, as there are, there were, &c. is always to be rendered into French by the Singular*; that is, by il y a, il y avoit, &c. see the Conjugation of that Verb, which is displayed in the Practical French Grammar, p. 124.*

E X A M P L E:

There are four Universities in Scotland;
Il y a quatre Universités en Ecosse.

* We have a peculiar way of rendering this verb in French, when the adverbial Particle *no* follows it before a Participle; which no rule but practice can inform the Learner of; Exam. There is no going out to-night, because it rains too much; *On ne sauroit sortir ce soir, parce-qu'il pleut trop.*

P R A X I S.

Among friends, there are frailties | to be indulged. | There
 parmi / ami m. faible m. qu'il faut excuser
 is no real happiness in this world. There are occasions
 vrai m. e f. monde m. rencontr. f.
 in life, wherein silence and simplicity are to be preferred to
 vie f. où silence m. simplicité f. préférer (1)
 discourse and ostentation. There is pleasure in being with
 discours m. plaisir m. à
 | learned men, | but there are people of a different opinion.
 savans pl. mais gens pl.

VI. The defective Verb *Must*, which is used in English through all the persons of the Present Tense only, is, if rendered by *Falloir*, an impersonal verb in French; its construction is either with *que* and the Subjunctive, or with the Infinitive alone; but when the Subject of the Verb is expressed before the Subjunctive, the former is to be preferred to the latter;

E X A M P L E S:

1. You must do that immediately;
Il faut que vous sachiez cela sur le champ.
2. That must be done immediately;
Il faut faire cela sur le champ.

P R A X I S.

I must go and see my Uncle, who is at S——, and
 aller (1 ir) voir oncle m.
 you must come with me. We must not then stay long, for
 venir (2 ir) donc long temps
 I must be at W—— this evening. It is not enough | to think
 car à soir m. suffire (4 ir) de penser
 with exactness, one must besides | express one's self | clearly.
 précisément f. de plus s'exprimer (1) avec exact.

86 THE CONSTRUCTION

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the foregoing Rules for the Construction of the Impersonal Verbs, It is, There is, and Must.

It is impossible to impose silence on the interior voice that

[upbraids us with] our faults; it is the voice of nature
imposer (1) à voix f. reprocher (1) faute f. nature f.
 itself. I am convinced it is better to live in England,
même convaincre (4ir) vivre en Angleterre
 than in France. It is with a School, as it is with a

State; it cannot subsist a long time without penal laws.

There is no situation, in life, without its disadvantages.

There are many persons speculatively knowing, but

[how many are there] practically wise? There is no

body but may reap great advantages from sciences; yet

there are few people who apply seriously to them. We

must endeavour to know our faults, and check our pas-

sions. You must work carefully to correct the bad

habits you have contracted, or else your friends will

forfake you. Those who have [a mind] to make a

figure in the world must always follow Epictetus's

maxim, BEAR and FORBEAR; that is to say, they must

bear the humours of their patrons, and forbear [to shew

the least resentment on the most galling occasions,

caprice m. professeur m. de faire voir dans sachant m, se f.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of ADVERBIAL PARTICLES.

I. **ADVERBIAL** Particles, except when they are used at the beginning of a Sentence, must be placed after a Verb; but with a Compound-tense, that is, with a Participle of the Preterite joined to any of the Auxiliary Verbs, they are generally placed* between the Auxiliary and the Participle;

E X A M P L E:

He *always* laughs. She has danced *well*;
Il rit toujours. Elle a bien dansé.

P R A X I S.

I commonly dine at two o'clock. I very seldom go out
ordinairement dîner (1) heure f. sortir (2 ir)
on Sundays, Your relation always promises, but never
les parent m. promettre (4 ir)
keeps his word; he has very often disappointed me.
tenir (2 ir) parole f. souvent tromper (1)

II. Particles serving to denote some Quantity, being before a Substantive, must have *de* (of) annexed to them, such as;

<i>Assez,</i>	<i>Combien,</i>	<i>Peu,</i>
<i>Autant,</i>	<i>Plus,</i>	<i>Tant,</i>
<i>Beaucoup,</i>	<i>Moins,</i>	<i>Trop.</i>

E X A M P L E:

He has very little wit, but much pride;
Il a très peu d'esprit, mais beaucoup d'orgueil.

* If it is a compound Particle in French, it must be placed after the Participle; Exam. He has accused him wrongfully, *Il l'a accusé à-tort; &c.* The Particle *affez* may be placed either before or after the Participle.

P R A X I S.

I read more books in a week, than you in a month.
lire (4 ir) dans semaine f. mois m.
 How much time have you not lost? You have now
tems m. perdre (4 ir) à présent
 money enough to pay all your debts, You have less credit
pour dette f. intérêt
 than I, and yet more wealth, but not so much œconomy.
dépense richesses pl. pas économie

III. *When the Particle well, is used to denote Manner or Quality, it signifies bien, and depends on Rule I. p. 87; but if bien serves to indicate Quantity, that is, when it implies much, many, &c. it requires du m, de la f, des c, after it;*

E X A M P L E:

Much time; many people;
Bien du tems; bien des gens.

P R A X I S.

There is much pleasure in teaching diligent boys; but
plaisir m. à enseigner garçon m.
 much trouble in instructing, and in ruling idle and
peine f. instruire gouverner
 wicked boys. There are many rascals who study nothing
méchanceté m. rien de soûin m. ne s'appliquent
 but mischief |. I have experienced many difficulties,
qu'à la malice essayer (1) difficulté f.
 have gone through | a good deal | of vexation, and
souffrir (2 ir) en chagrin m.
 spent much time with many scholars; but | to no purpose |.
employer (1) tems m. écolier m. sans effet.

You are to observe—That the Adverbial particles où (where), d'où (from whence), are always put before the Verb; and those of Order, such as premièrement, enfin, ensuite, and the like, are as often placed before, as they are after verbs; for their arrangement depends entirely on the style of the Discourse.

OF PARTICLES.

29

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of PREPOSITIVE PARTICLES.

I. **PREPOSITIVE** Particles, with respect to their construction, are generally used in French as in English;

E X A M P L E:

Noah did live *before* and *after* the Flood;
Noé a vécu avant et après le Déluge.

P R A X I S.

God has done all things for his own glory. Good edu-
Dieu *faire (air)* *propre c. gloire f.*
 cation teaches | how to behave | towards every body.
enseigner (1) *à se bien comporter* *tout le monde*
 What difference there is between the good and the wicked!
il y a entre *bons m, pl.*
 these are | as much | esteemed, as the others are despised.
ceux-ci *autant* *estimer (1)* *que* *mépriser (1)*

II. The following Particles, being before a Substantive, require the Article *du, m. de la, f. or des, pl. or the Particle de* before Pronouns or Proper names, annexed to them; viz.

<i>Près*,</i>	<i>Autour,</i>	<i>Au travers,</i>
<i>Proche*,</i>	<i>Au-dessous,</i>	<i>Hors,</i>
<i>Le long,</i>	<i>Au-dessus,</i>	<i>Vis-à-vis*,</i>
<i>À l'égard,</i>	<i>Au-rebours,</i>	<i>À l'opposé;</i>

* Notwithstanding the Rule, which precedes these Particles, we may say, in common conversation, *près l'église St. Pierre*, near St. Peter's Church; *proche or vis-à-vis le Lion rouge*, next to, or over against the red Lion, &c.

E X A M P L E:

That is too near the fire;

Cela est trop près du feu.

P R A X I S.

We are not yet near the town; as soon as you are out of

the meadow | in which | you are, walk along the river.

Does not Mr. Smyth live near Mr. Crauley's warehouse,

ever against the red lion? I do assure you that your shortest

way to Chelsea-college, is to go thro' St. James's park.

chemin m. collège m. de passer Jacques parc m.

III. The Prepositive Particles, *jusque* (till, until, or even to) *quant* (as to or as for) require the third State, that is, *au*, *m*, *à la*, *f*, &c. set before a Substantive; or *à* before Pronouns;

E X A M P L E:

He extended his generosity even to the Strangers;

Il étendit sa générosité jusqu'aux Etrangers.

P R A X I S.

A labourer that works | from morning till night, | lives

more content, if he is well paid, than those that have

either honourable preferments, or enjoy great incomes.

As to that, I am of the same opinion. They that will

persevere in the fear of God, even to death, shall enjoy the

glory | of heaven | ; as for you, you do not seem to mind it,

gloire f. céleste c. par ois (4 ir) s'acquiescer (1)

IV. The Particles *in* or *into* signify *en* and *dans*; but these words are not to be used indiscriminately; for *en* does not admit of the Definite Article, before its regimen; *dans*, on the contrary, claims it before common Substantives, and is also prefixed to the names of Kingdoms and Authors*;

E X A M P L E S:

In France, in town, in a week;

1. *En France, en ville, en une semaine.*
2. *Dans la France, dans la ville, dans la semaine.*

P R A X I S.

They make fine china in *Worcestershire*. Mr. D— re-
on fait porcelaine f. comté m.
 turned yesterday in Mr. F—'s coach. I have in my
venir (2 ir) carrosse m.
 closet an account of | whatever is | curious in *France*,
cabinet m. description f. tout ce qu'il y a de
 and in *Italy*. Have you not bought in *Ireland* the watch
Italie acheter (1) Irlande montre f.
 you have in your pocket? No, I bought it in *Scotland*.
poebe f. Ecoffe.

V. The Prepositive particles *at*, *to*, *in*, denoting the habitation, house, or home of persons, are to be rendered by *chez* with such a Conjunctive pronoun annexed to it, as the sense requires, if no surname is mentioned; otherwise the surname is to follow the foresaid Particle; and, in either case, the word house or home is not to be expressed in French;

* As *dans Cicéon*, &c. It would require too prolix and tedious remarks, for a performance of this kind, to discriminate between the use and application of *dans* and *en*; therefore, I shall only add that we say both *en Été* and *dans l'Été*, in Summer; *en Hiver* and *dans l'Hiver*, in Winter; *en Automne*, and *dans l'Automne*, in Autumn; yet we do not say *en Printemps*, but *dans la Printemps* and *au Printemps*, in the Spring. Learners may also observe that *in* and *into* are, in some cases, better rendered by *entre*, than by *dans* or *en*; as for instance—To hold a child in one's arms, *tenir un enfant entre ses bras*; to deliver a thing into any one's hands, *remettre quelque chose entre ses mains*; &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION

E X A M P L E:

Send this to Mr. Brent's house;

Envoyez ceci chez Monsieur Brent.

P R A X I S.

I am going to Mr. Daniel's house; is he at home? I

aller (1 ir)

don't know, for I come from Mrs. Maplet's. Have you

*savoir (3 ir)**venir (2 ir)*

called at Mr. Smyth's this morning? I have heard that

*dit**matin m.**apprendre (4 ir)*

Mr. Tireman won't permit you to stay at his house.

Is it true? If it is so | you may come to my house.

*permettre**de**vrai**en ce cas là**pouvoir (3 ir)*

Observe—1st. That the Prepositive particle *chez* is preceded by *de*, when the sense of the Phrase implies coming from; Exam. Il vient *de* chez lui, he comes from home; or from his house; &c.—2^{dly}, That the same Particle (*chez*) is frequently used, in French, in the sense of among and with; Exam. Il y avoit une Loi *chez* les Atheniens, there was a Law among the Athenians; &c.—3^{dly}, That the French language admits also of the Prepositive particles, *à*, *de*, *en*, and *pour*, in many Phrases wherein English particles of a different import are used; and even in some modes of speech, which contain no Particles; Examples:

Un habit *à* la mode,

A coat in the fashion.

Trop long *de* six pouces,

Too long by six inches.

Il est *en* repos,

He is at rest.

Elle a vingt ans *pour* le moins, She is twenty at the least.Un pays *à* bled,

A corn country.

Rien *de* mauvais,

Nothing bad.

These few Examples will suffice, I presume, to give the Learner a general idea of the signification of these Particles, without puzzling him with any more observations on the manner of rendering those which are idiomatically used.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of CONJUNCTIVE PARTICLES.

I. ***M**OST Conjunctive Particles are used, with respect to their Construction, in French as in English;*

E X A M P L E:

Obey me, *otherwise* you shall be punished;
Obéissez moi, autrement vous serez puni.

P R A X I S.

Speak little and think well, if you would be | looked
parler (1) penser (1) vouloir (3 ir) passer (1)
 on as | a man of sense. Consider for what purpose you
pour esprit (1) pour fin f.
 are sent to school, therefore don't neglect your studies;
envoyer (1) c'est pourquoi négliger (1)
 besides, you know how shameful and even hurtful it is, to
d'ailleurs savoir (3 ir) combien nuisible c.
 be ignorant. Mr. Bateman lives as if he was never to die.
ignorant m, e f. vivre (4 ir) mourir (2 ir)

II. *If the following Particles are between two Substantives, the last must have the same Article, Adjective, or Particle prefixed to it as the first; if between two Verbs, the second must be of the same Mood, Tense, and Person, as the first; viz.*

And, *et*. Either, *soit*. Or, *ou*. Neither, Nor, *ni*.

* This is to be understood of those phrases wherein the Articles, or Adjectives, denote a division of the sense in the discourse, or a difference of Gender and Number in the Substantives; otherwise they are seldom repeated; Exam. Great and vast projects, together with a speedy and wise expedition, &c. *de grands et vastes projets, joints d'une prompt et sage exécution, &c.*

THE CONSTRUCTION

E X A M P L E :

Either *through* idleness, or weakness, &c.

Soit par *pareſſe*, ou par *foibleſſe*, &c.

P R A X I S.

I have known ſeveral boys and girls that preferred reading

either to playing or walking. Either thro' clemency, or

policy, he pardoned him. Exercise either of the body

or the mind is absolutely neceſſary. Neither riches nor

dignities tempt him. He is either a wiſe man, or a fool.

III. The following Expreſſions tho' uſed in Engliſh before the Indicative, require, in French, the Subjunctive after them ;

V I Z.

<i>A Dieu ne plaiſe que,</i>	<i>Dieu veuille que,</i>	<i>Poſez le cas que,</i>
<i>Afin que,</i>	<i>Encore que,</i>	<i>Pour peu que,</i>
<i>A moins que *,</i>	<i>Excepté que,</i>	<i>Pourvu que,</i>
<i>Au-cas que,</i>	<i>Juſqu'à ce que,</i>	<i>Quoique,</i>
<i>Avant que,</i>	<i>Loin que,</i>	<i>Sans que,</i>
<i>Bien que,</i>	<i>Malgré que,</i>	<i>Si ce n'eſt que,</i>
<i>Bien loin que,</i>	<i>Moyennant que,</i>	<i>Si non que,</i>
<i>Ce n'eſt pas que,</i>	<i>Nonobſtant que,</i>	<i>Soit que,</i>
<i>De crainte que *,</i>	<i>Non pas que,</i>	<i>Supoſez que,</i>
<i>De peur que *,</i>	<i>Plût à Dieu que,</i>	<i>Tant ſans faut que.</i>

* The Particle *ne* is always uſed with theſe expreſſions, viz. *à moins que* (unleſs) *de crainte que* and *de peur que* (for fear) tho' no negation is intended by it ; Exam. Unleſs you ſtay here, *à moins que vous ne reſſiez ici* ; For fear you ſhould fall, *de crainte que* or *de peur que vous ne tombiez* ; &c. In theſe and the like Phraſes, *ne* is called, by Grammarians, an expletive Particle.

E X A M P L E :

I shall be there *before* he is up;
Je serai là avant qu'il soit levé.

P R A X I S.

You will speak French | very soon | provided you follow
parler (1) bien-tôt pourvu que suivre (4 ir)
 exactly my directions, although you think that language is
précipite m. quoique croire (4 ir) langue f.
 difficult; but remember that you can neither speak nor
difficile c. s' souvenir (2 ir) pouvoir (3 ir)
 write it correctly, unless you learn the Rules. Whether
écrire (4 ir) à moins que apprendre (4 ir) soit que
 you are rich or poor, you are no less obliged to be virtuous.
riche c. pauvre c. moins vertueux m, e f.

IV. The following *Conjunctive Particles*, tho' commonly used in English before the *Present Tense*, generally require the Verb to which they relate, to be in the *Future tense* *;

V I Z.

As, *à mesure que.* As soon as, *aussi-tôt que.*
 As long as, *tant que.* After, *après que.*
 As many as, *autant que.* When, *quand.*

P R A X I S.

As you study and learn the French tongue, you'll find
étudier (1) apprendre (4) langue f. trouver (1)
 more beauties | in it | . As long as I see that you are
y voir (3 ir)

* But when we speak of habitual actions, such as we are wont to do, or usually do, the Verb must be used in French as in English. Exam. When he has dined, he goes to his business; *Quand il a dîné, il va à ses affaires*; and in this, and the like expressions, the conjunctive Particles *dès que*, or *lorsque*, may be used, instead of *quand*; as *dès qu'il a dîné*, or *lorsqu'il a dîné*, &c.

displeased with Mr. — I will not visit him. As soon
facé m., e f. contre *rendre (4)* *visite*
 as you have done your exercise, bring it to me. After we
finir (2) *thème m.*
 have dined, we will take a walk together, in the Park.
diner (1) *se promener (1)* *ensemble.* *parc m.*

V. These two Particles But and For are conjunctive Particles, when placed after any of the Stops used in punctuation, in which case, they serve to connect a part of a sentence with another; and their signification is *mais* (but) *car* (for): yet if they are in the middle of a sentence, the word but stands for only, which must be rendered into French by *ne* before the Verb, and *que* after it; the word for becomes, in the like case, a Prepositive Particle, and is to be rendered into French by *pour*;

E X A M P L E S:

1. It is but too true, for I have seen it;
Il n'est que trop vrai, car je l'ai vu.
2. This was not for you, but take it;
Celui-ci n'étoit pas pour vous, mais prenez le.

P. R A X I S.

I desired but one favour of you, and you have refused it
désirer (1) *faveur f.* *refuser (1)*
 me. If you would give me but one exercise to do, and
vouloir (3 ir) *doucir m.*
 a lesson to learn, | at a time, | you would oblige me. Mr.
leçon f. *à la fois* *obliger (1)*
Holdfast has (got) money, but he will neither lend it, nor
argent m. *ni* *prêter (1)*
 spend it. Is he so covetous? it is but too true; but he is an
dépenser (1) *avare c.* *vrai* *être (4 ir)*
 honest man. England, Scotland, and the Principality of
Angleterre *Ecosse* *principauté f.*
 Wales form but one Kingdom, called Great-Britain.
Galles *faire (4 ir)* *royaume m.* *Grande-Bretagne f.*

VI. When the Particle *if* (*si*) is repeated twice in the same sentence, the second *if* is to be rendered into French by *que*, and the following Verb put in the Subjunctive;

E X A M P L E:

If you was in France, and if you had, &c.

Si vous étiez en France, et que vous eussiez, &c.

P R A X I S.

If you | have a mind | to go and take the air, and if
avez envie de prendre (4 ir) air m.
 you want a coach, mine is at your service. If your uncle
avoir besoin de service m. oncle m.
 does not come, and if you are obliged to go into the
venir (2 ir) obliger (1) à
 country, I will lend you my horse. If you believe all sorts
sampagne E. prêter (1) cheval m. croire (4 ir)
 of false reports made against you, and if you do not trust
bruit m. se fier (1)
 to a good and sincere friend, you'll never be happy.
bon ami m. heureux m.

The Remarks which I think necessary to be added to the preceding Rules are—1st. That many Expressions ending with *que*, not unlike those which are annexed to Rule III. p. 94, will have the next Verb remain in the Indicative Mood; such as,

A cause que, De puis que, Si bien que,
 Ainsi que, De sorte que, Vu que, &c.

And others, which, by ending with *de* instead of *que*, require the Verb, which follows them, to be in the Present Infinitive; such as, Au lieu de, faute de, &c. Many of them may be attended either by *de* or *que*, as Afin de and afin que; de peur de and de peur que; &c.—2^{dly}. That the Conjunctive Particle and is not expressed in French, whenever it comes after either the Verb to Go or to Come immediately followed by another Verb; as in these Examples, Go and fetch him, *Allez le chercher*; Come and play, *Venez jouer*; &c.

RULES for the FRENCH Construction of INTERJECTIVE PARTICLES.

I. INTERJECTIVE Particles need not be much exemplified, as they are construed after the same manner in French as in English; except the Particle *malheur* (woe to) which requires the Article *au m.*, *à la f.*, *aux pl.* or the Particle *à* prefixed to the Substantive or Pronoun it refers to;

E X A M P L E:

Woe to those that resist the Almighty!

Malheur à ceux qui résistent au Toutpuissant!

P R A X I S.

Alas! where's, now my flourishing season? Oh God!
Hélas *à présent* *bel* *âge m.* *Bon Dieu*
 how fast do years slide away! O heavens! hear my
que vite *années f.* *écouter (1)* *ciel m.* *écouter (1)*
 voice. O earth! lend thy ear to my complaint. Woe
voix f. *terre f.* *prêter (1)* *oreille f.* *plainte f.*
 to thee, who despiseth learning, and rejectest good councils!
mépriser (1) *sciences pl.* *dédaigner (1)* *avis m.*
 O fatal accident! O passion formerly so sweet! How
funeste *jadis* *dou-x m.* *se f.* *que*
 hard this is to bear! Well! one must undergo one's
pénible *supporter (1)* *Eh bien* *subir* *son*
 fate. How impenetrable are thy decrees! Hush! I hear
destin m. *impénétrable c.* *décret m.* *paix*
 somebody. | Fy! Fy! | don't put yourself in a passion.
quelqu'un *si* *donc* *se mettre (4 ir)* *colère*
 Pshaw! don't do that. Softly, what | are you at?
Ouais *faire (4 ir)* *doucement* *faites-vous*

Observe, that some of these expressions may receive different Denominations, according to their different Uses; for instance, *Paix!* would be a Substantive in another phrase; &c.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE

On the Rules for the Construction of the Particles.

Antony was perhaps as great *a* man as Augustus, tho'
Antoine *peut-être aussi* *que* *Auguste*
 he was not so fortunate as he. Caesar was as courageous
heureux *César* *vaillant*
 as Alexander. Man is unhappy but thro' anxiety. Always
Alexandre *malheureux* *inquiétude f.*
 be employed, for you will never be better pleased, than
employer (1) *jamais* *plus* *content m, e f.*
 when you have something to do: business, by its motion,
quand *quelque chose* *affaires pl.* *mouvement m.*
 continually brings heat and life to the spirits; but
procure (1) *esprit m.*
 idleness greatly corrupts them. Speak not any thing
perisse f. *corrompre (4 ir)* *Dire (4 ir)*
 concerning any one that is absent, that you would not
touchent *une personne* *absent m, e f.*
 dare say, if he should be present. When you can
oser (1) *présent m, e f.*
 get a friend that will tell you of your failings or faults,
trouver (1) *parler (1)* *faible m.* *faute f.*
 grow not angry, nor excuse them; but heartily thank him.
se fâcher (1) *excuser (1)* *remercier (1)*
 Let all men know you, but none thoroughly; as no man
que *connaître (4 ir)* *à fond*
 dares cross a river | on foot | till he has sounded its depth,
passer (1) *à pied* *sonder (1)*
 | even so | a man is respected so long as the bottom of his
de même *fond f.*
 capacity is not discovered. Follow my advice, and you
découvrir (2 ir) *conseil m.*
 shall have neither troubles to fear, nor vexations to endure.
peine f. *chagrin m.* *essayer (1)*

THE END OF THE FIRST PART.

EXERCISES

CONTAINING

IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.



PART THE SECOND.

IN the following exercises I have endeavoured to introduce several of those idiomatical expressions which constitute a polite and elegant style, in order to take young Learners off from *literal Translations*, to which they are apt to stick too closely at first, and to inculcate into them certain turns of phrases, which they have not been able to observe in the foregoing Compositions. This is the end I proposed to myself in this Second Part; and that they may have a general idea of Translation, it would be proper to make them read attentively the following observations, which contain whatever is necessary to be previously known, by them, on this subject.

TRANSLATION is a *clear* and *faithful* expression of the thoughts of an Author into a different language from that in which he has written.

A clear Translation consists chiefly in a purity of style, an elegance of expression, and a choice of proper words.

A faithful Translation is that which, confining itself to the words, and observing the sense of the Author you translate, expresses exactly his thoughts.

As the turn of the phrase generally differs in every Language, it is necessary to make an analysis and construction of the period you would translate; so that there be not a word, nor even the least Particle of which you know not the government, the signification, and the power. You must also consider attentively, whether the period you translate will admit of different meanings, in order to find the true one, by comparing what has gone before, with what follows; but the surest way is to examine every term one after another, and reason over the construction.

When the true sense of the Author is concealed, either by his obscure and perplexed manner of expression, or because you have not a perfect knowledge of his language, you must then enter into a strict examination of every word in the Phrase, and read what he has said before or after the passage which appears difficult, without repining at the fatigue of so disagreeable but indispensable a task.

The differences of Languages will not always permit you to keep the same metaphors, and the same allegories; they must however be retained where your language affords any such, or have recourse to others of a similar kind, when they are wanting. You must as nearly as possible express a metaphorical or allegorical word by a term of the same nature, when the metaphors are very conspicuous; for there are many words truly metaphorical, but which custom has rendered proper, as if they had a primitive signification.

Herein consists the chief difficulties of an exact and accurate Translation; as the idiom of one Language is often different from that of another, and as the expressions we are obliged to use in translating have not always the same beauties as those of the original.

ON KNOWLEDGE.

Science f.

THE life of a wise man is lengthened by | his^a
vie f. sage c. s'allonger (1)
 pursuit of knowledge, | as that of a fool by his passions.
acquisitions pl. comme for m.
 The time of the one is long, because he does not know^b
long m. parceque savoir (3 ir)
 | what to do with it; | but the other distinguishes every
à quoi l'employer mais distinguer (1)
 moment | of it | with useful and amusing thoughts; the
on par pensée f.
 one^c is always wishing it away, and the other^d always
toujours possé m, e f.
 enjoying it. How^e different is the view of past life,
jouir (2) en que vie f. vie f.
 in the man who | is grown old | in knowledge, from that
à vieillir
 of him who is grown old in ignorance. | The latter is
ignorance f. dernier
 like the owner of a barren country, that^f | fills his eye
maître m. stérile c. campagne f. ne voit
 with the prospect of | naked hills and plains, which
que désert m, e f. plaine f.
 produce nothing; the other beholds an agreeable land-
produire (4 ir) contempler (1) pay-
 skip, and can scarce cast his eye on a single spot of his^g
sage m. à p. ins. la vue morceau m.
 possessions, | that is not | covered with some beautiful plant.
- terre f. qui ne soit. de quelque plante f.

EXPLANATION.

^a His acquisitions. ^b know how to spend it. ^c one wishes it always elapsed. ^d other enjoys it always. ^e how the view of past life appears different to the man who. ^f that sees nothing but some hills and plains naked. ^g his land, &c.

ON LANGUAGES.

Langue f.

The understanding of languages serves | for an | intro-
 du^{intelligence f.}ction to all the sci^{servir (1 ir) de}ences. We^a thereby come at the
 knowl^{science f.}edge of a great^b many curious points, with very
 little trou^{connaissance f.}bles; for, by this means, all times and coun-
 tries lie open to us. We become in a manner contem-
 porary with all ages, and^c inhab^{être (4 ir)}itants of the world;
 and^d are qual^{de}ified to converse with the most learned men,
 who are always at hand, and whose^e ever use^{en quelque façon}ful and agree-
 able convers^{prêt m. cf.}ation enrich^{toujours}es the mind, and teaches us^f to
 make | an equal advantage | of the virt^{agré-}ues and vices of
 man^{profiter (1)}kind. Without the aid of languages, all these ora-
 cles are dumb to us; and | for want | of having the key,
 which can^g admit us to these treasures, we remain poor
 | in the mid^{provenir (3 ir)}st | of immen^{nécess m.}se riches, and interest^{rester (1)}ing sci^{richesse f.}ences,
 which can^h admit us to these treasures, we remain poor

EXPLANATION.

^a We acquire by it the. ^b great number of curious.
^c and with all the. ^d and we are in a condition of con-
 versing. ^e whose conversation ever useful. ^f us to profit
 equally of the. ^g and give us access to these treasures, &c.

ON GEOGRAPHY.

Géographie f.

Geography is a science^a no longer esteemed a fine
 accomplishment only, but a necessary part of education;
 for^b no study seems better calculated for the entertain-
 ment and instruction of young persons than this. Geo-
 graphy gives them a perfect idea of the exterior surface of
 the globe, of its natural and political divisions, and of the
 curiosities of^c every part of it: hence^d it is justly called
 the eye of History, the Soldier's companion, the Mer-
 chant's director, and the Traveller's guide. It is also a
 study^e of the first consideration among those qualities^f
 requisite for forming the scholar; for it is adapted not
 only to gratify our curiosity, but also to^g enlarge our
 mind, to banish prejudices, and make us | acquainted with |
 our real advantages, and those of our fellow-creatures.

EXPLANATION.

^a Science which is no more looked upon as. ^b for there is
 no study which seems fitter. ^c of all its parts. ^d hence one
 calls it with reason. ^e study which holds the first rank. ^f qua-
 lities that are requisite. ^g to encrease our knowledge, &c.

ON POLITENESS.

Politesse f.

Politeness is requisite to keep up the relish of life and
nécessaire c. procure us that affection and esteem, which every man
procurer (1) who^a has a sense | of it | must desire. The established
estime f. maxims of Politeness^b are little less than Good-nature
tout polished and beautified by art; they teach a person to be-
en devoir (3) have with deference towards every body, in all the com-
maxime f. mon incidents of society; and particularly so, ^c whenever
différer (1) peu a person's situation may naturally beget any disagreeable
embellir (2) suspicion | in him |. Thus, old men know their in-
comporter (1) firmities, and naturally dread contempt from the young;
envers hence, ^d well educated youth redouble the instances of
rencontre f. respect^e to their Elders. Strangers and Foreigners appear
particulièrement to be without protection; hence, in all ^f polite companies,
personne f. they receive the highest marks of civility.
pouvoir (3) ir
à son égard
occasionner
vieillard m.
in-
firmité f.
aprébender (1)
jeunes gens m.
augmenter (1)
marque f.
envers
inconnu m.
étranger m.
sans
tout m, e f.
recevoir (3)

EXPLANATION.

^a Who is sensible of it. ^b politeness differs little from the.
^c so every time that the situation of a person can naturally oc-
casion. ^d hence young people well educated. ^e respect towards
their superiors. ^f all companies wherein politeness reigns.

106 IDIOMATIC EXERCISES.

ON DISCRETION.

Discrétion f.

There are many shining qualities in the mind of man,
Il y a éclatant m, c f. esprit m.
 but there is none so useful as discretion: | it is this | which
mais s que c'est elle
 gives a value to all the rest, which sets them at work in
prix m. mettre (4 ir)
 their proper times and places, and turns them to the ad-
temps m. gouverner (1)
 vantage of the person who ^a is possessed of them. With-
personne f. posséder (1)
 out it, Learning is pedantry, Wit impertinence, and Vir-
savoir m. esprit m. ver-
 tue itself ^b looks like weakness. Discretion is the per-
tu f. ressembler (1) à ra-
 fection of reason, and ^c a guide to us in all the duties of
finement m. guide m. devoir m.
 life; and ^d does not only make a man the master of his own
vie f. rendre (4)
 parts, but also of ^e other men's. The discreet man finds
talent m. discret m. décou-
 out the talents of those ^f he converses with, and | knows
voir (2 ir) converser (1) s-
 how | to apply them to proper uses. He carries his
voir (3 ir) appliquer (1) usage m.
 thoughts to the end of every action, and ^g considers the
jusqu'à considérer (1)
 most distant, | as well as | the most immediate effects
aussi bien que immédiat m, c f.
 | of it | .
en

EXPLANATION.

^a Who possesses them. ^b itself resembles to weakness.
^c and our guide in all the duties. ^d and renders not only a
 man master. ^e of those of other men. ^f those with whom
 he converses. ^g and of it considers the effects the most dis-
 tant, &c.

ON TEMPERANCE.

Tempérance f.

Temperance has those particular advantages above all
other means^a of preserving health, that it^b | may be prac-
tised | by all ranks and^c conditions, at any season, or^d
place. It is a kind of regimen which every man may
| put himself into | without^e interruption to business, ex-
pence of money, or loss of time. Every animal,^f but man,
keeps to one dish. Herbs serve to this species, fish to
that, and flesh to a third. Man falls upon every thing
that^g comes in his way; not the smallest fruit, or the least
excrecence of the earth, scarce a berry or mushroom
can escape him. Socrates, notwithstanding he lived in
Athens during a great plague, never caught the least in-
fection, which ancient authors unanimously ascribe to that
uninterrupted Temperance which he always observed.

EXPLANATION.

^a Means to preserve health. ^b it is practicable by. ^c and
all conditions. ^d or in any place. ^e without interrupting
his business. without expence of money, or without loss.
^f animal, except man. ^g that is found on his way.

108 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

On INDOLENCE.

Indolence f.

Though indolence operates but slowly, yet it under-
^{Quisque} mines | ^{agir (2)} by degrees | ^{que} the foundation of every virtue. A vice
^{peu à peu} of a more lively nature would be ^{virtu f.} a more desirable tyrant
^{anti-f m, vs f.} than this rust of the mind, which gives a tincture of its
^{rouille f.} nature to ^{esprit m.} every action of ^{teinture f.} one's life, It is ^c | to no pur-
^{nature f.} pose | to have ^{vie f.} within ourselves the seeds of a thousand
^{dans nos âmes} good qualities, if we want the vigour and resolution ne-
^{qualité f.} cessary for ^{manquer (1)} | the exerting them. As death ^{né-} brings all
^{cessaire c.} persons | back to an equality, | ^{les mettre au jour} so ^{rendre (4)} does this image of it,
^{personne f.} this slumber of the soul, leave no difference between the
^{sommeil m.} greatest genius, and the meanest understanding. A fa-
^{génie m.} culty of doing things remarkably ^{petit m.} praise-worthy, thus
^{faire (4 ir)} concealed, is ^{esprit m.} of no more use to the owner, than a heap
^{caché m, c f.} of gold to the man who dares not use it.
^{usage m.} ^{propriétaire m.} ^{monceau m.}

Son servir.

EXPLANATION.

^a Be a tyrant more desirable. ^b of our life. ^c is in vain.
^d within our souls. ^e for to bring them to light. ^f renders
all persons equal. ^g so this image, this slumber of the. ^h re-
markably worthy of praise. ⁱ is no more of use.

On GAMING.

Jeu m.

Gaming seems to me of all vices the greatest enemy ^a
 to happiness; ^{parôître (4 ir)} its inseparable attendants are envy, ^{vice m.} deceit, ^{ennemi m.}
^{bouheur m.} impiety, and ^c | a whole train | of diabolical associates. ^{fourberie f.}
 Health, peace of mind, family, friends, country, and ^d in
^{tranquillité f.} short, every ^e thing valuable and desirable, are sacrificed ^{pays m.}
^{un mot} | to it. | All conversation and improvement | is put a ^{desirable c.}
^{lui} stop to | the moment gaming commences; friendship ^{progrès m.} ^{fi-}
^{nir (2)} and society, benevolence and humanity cease, and | no- ^{dès le} ^{commencer (1)} ^{amitié f.}
^{bienveillance f.} thing further is thought of | but the ruin of those ^f you ^{cesser (1)}
^{on ne pense plus} are in company with. It is ridiculous to hear some peo- ^{qu'à} ^{ruine f.}
^{compagnie} ple term it an agreeable amusement, an inoffensive relax- ^{ridicule c.}
^{opeller (1)} ation, &c. those who so miscale it, must notwithstanding ^{innocent m, e f.}
^{convenir (2 ir)} allow ^e it to be an irrational and unimproving diversion, ^{représenter (1)} ^{dependent}
^{irraisonnable c.} and that | at the best | it is but murdering time. ^{inutile c.}
^{tout au plus} ^{tuer (1)}

EXPLANATION.

^a Enemy of our happiness. ^b envy, deceit, &c. continually attend it. ^c and crowd of diabolical evils. ^d and in a word. ^e all that is valuable. ^f with which one (on) is in company. ^g allow that it is a diversion irrational, &c.

110 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

CHARACTER of a RICH MAN.

GITO has a florid complexion, full-blown cheeks, a
 fixed bold eye, is high-chested, and his gait is steady
 and deliberate. He speaks with confidence; and pays
 but little regard to what others say. He spits | at a
 great distance from him, | and sneezes very loud. At
 table, and | when walking, | he takes up more room than
 another man. When taking a walk | with his equals,
 he places himself | in the | center of them. He in-
 terrupts and corrects those who are speaking; but he
 himself will not be interrupted; and all listen to him so
 long as | he thinks proper | to talk. When seating himself,
 he sinks into a large easy-chair, and then knits his brows:
 afterwards pulls his hat over his eyes, that he may not see
 any one; then | pushes back again | his hat, in order to dis-
 cover his haughty and audacious front. He is sometimes
 jocular, laughs aloud, is impatient, presumptuous, cho-
 leric, loose. He is | of a political turn, | and myste-
 rious | with regard to the present times. | He fancies
 himself possessed of talents and genius—He is Rich.

frais m. teint m. pendant m, e f. joue f.
 fixe c. œil m. estomac haut démarche f.
 déli-éré m, e f. parler (1) confiance faire (4 ir)
 très peu d'attention dire (4 ir) cracher (1)
 fort loin éternuer (1) haut
 à la promenade prendre (4 ir) place
 En se promenant avec égal m.
 se placer (1) au milieu m. in-
 interrompre (4 ir) corriger (1) mais
 vouloir (3 ir) interrompre (4 ir) écouter (1)
 il a envie s'affaïr (3 ir)
 enfoncer (1) fauteuil m. froncer (1) sourcil m.
 abaisser (1) voir (3 ir)
 der sonne f. relever (1) à fin de
 fier m, e f. arrogant visage m.
 enjoué rire (4 ir) co-
 lère c. libertin m. politique c. réser-
 vé à l'égard des affaires du tems s'ima-
 giner (1) talent m. esprit m. riser

IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES. 111

CHARACTER of a POOR MAN.

PHEBO is hollow-eyed, lank and meagre of visage.
a les yeux creux *sec m.* *maigre c.*
 He sleeps little, and his slumbers are very short. He
dormir (2 ir) *repos m.*
 is absent, he muses, and, though a man of sense, has a
abstrait *rêver (1)* *quoique* *esprit*
 stupid air. He imagines himself | troublesome to those
s'imaginer (1) *être* *incommode c.*
 he is conversing with. He relates every thing lamely,
converser (1) *conter (1)* *froidem.*
 and in a few words. No one listens to him, he does
en *peu de* *Personne ne*
 not raise a laugh. He applauds and smiles at what others
faire (4 ir) *rire* *applaudir (2)* *sourire (4 ir)*
 say to him, and is of their opinion. He runs, he flies,
dire (4 ir) *courir (2 ir)* *voler (1)*
 to do them any little service. He is complaisant, bust-
rendre (4) *petit m, c f.* *em-*
 ling, and a flatterer. There is no street, | how crowd-
pressé *flatteur m.* *rue* *si rem-*
 ed soever, | but he can easily | pass through it, without the
plie de monde *aisément* *y passer*
 least trouble, and slip away unperceived. When desired
embarras m. *se couler (1)* *prier (1)*
 to sit, he scarce touches the frame of the chair. He
à peine *bord m.*
 speaks low in conversation, and | is inarticulate; | yet
bas *il articule mal*
 sometimes he discourses freely on public affairs, and is
quelque fois *librement* *affaire f.*
 angry at the age. He coughs under his hat, and spits al-
contre *siècle m.* *tousser (1)* *cracher (1)*
 most upon himself; he endeavours to sneeze apart from
sur *sâcher (1)* *éternuer (1)*
 the company; and puts no person to the trouble of sa-
donner (1) *peine f.* *sa-*
 luting, or paying him a compliment.—He is Poor.
tuer (1) *faire (4 ir)* *pauvre*

112 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

CHARACTER of a GOOD MAN.

AGATHO makes the interest of mankind, in a manner,
considérer (1) intérêts pl. en quelque façon
 his own; and has a tender and affectionate concern for
comme les siens their welfare; he cannot think himself happy, whatever
bien-être m. se croire (4 ir) his possessions and his preferments are, while he sees
richesses pl. place f. pendant que others miserable; his wealth and power delight him
richesses pl. réjouir (2)
 | chiefly, as | the poor and indigent are the better *for it*;
d'autant plus que s'en trouver (1) mieux
 and the greatest charm of prosperity, is the advantage
attrait m. avantage m. it affords of relieving his | fellow creatures; | and to give
procurer (1) assister (1) parer (1) m. assistance and support, | according to | the various exi-
secours m. selon be- gences of, those with whom he converses, is his constant
soin m. se trouver (1) endeavour; and that he may practise the more large
étude f. pouvoir (3 ir) faire se. étendu m., e f. and generous charity, he retrenches useless pomp and
libéralité f. inutile c. expense, esteeming that a much more sublime and noble
dépense f. bien plus gratification, than the amusements and gallantries of a
satisfaction f. galanterie f. vain and luxurious age. Finally, he is unwearied in his
fièle m. infatigable c. endeavours to promote the happiness of others, and he
effort m. procurer (1) bonheur m. not only takes all opportunities that present *themselves* of
saisir (2) conjoncture f. se rencontrer (1) doing good, but seeks all occasions to be useful, tho' he has
rien m. chercher (1) quoique frequently | met with ungrateful returns | —He is Good.
trouvé des ingrats. bon

VAIN HOPE FRUSTRATED.

ALNASCHAR was a very idle man, that never would
 set his hand | to any business, during his father's life. When
 his father died, he left him about an hundred drachmas
 in Persian money. Alnaschar laid it out in glasses, bottles,
 and the finest china ware. | These he put up in a large
 open basket, and having | made choice of | a very little
 shop, placed the basket at his feet, and leaned his back
 upon the wall, in expectation of customers. As he was
 in this posture, with his eyes upon the basket, he fell into
 a most amusing | train of thoughts, | and was overheard
 by one of his neighbours, as he spoke the following words.
 This basket, says he, cost me an hundred drachmas,
 which is all I have | in the | world. I shall quickly make
 two hundred of it, by selling it in retail. These two
 hundred drachmas will, in | a very little while, | rise to
 four hundred, which | of course | will amount in time to four
 thousand. As soon as by this means I | am master | of
 ten thousand, I | will lay aside | my trade of glass-man,
 and turn jeweller. I shall then | deal in | diamonds,

114 IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES.

pearls, and all sorts of precious stones. When I have
 got together as much wealth as I desire, I | will make a pur-
 chase of | the finest house I can find, with lands, slaves,
 eunuchs and horses. I shall then begin to make a noise
 in the world. I will not, however, stop there, but still
 continue my traffic, till I have | got together | an hundred
 thousand drachmas. When I find myself master of an
 hundred thousand drachmas, I shall naturally set myself
 on the foot of a prince, and will demand the grand vizier's
 daughter in marriage, letting him know, | at the | same
 time, that it is my intention to make him a present of a
 thousand pieces of gold on our marriage night. As soon
 as I have married the princess, and given my father-in-law
 the thousand pieces of gold, which I had promised him,
 I will bring her | to my house, | where I shall take great
 care to breed in her a due respect for me. To this end,
 I shall confine her to her own apartment, make her a
 short visit, and talk but little to her. Her mother will
 then come, and bring her daughter to me, as I am seated
 on my sofa. The daughter | with tears in her eyes, | will

sorte f.

piere f.

amasser (1) - autant de

que

acheter (1)

maison f.

esclaves

eunuque

alors

du bruit

monde m.

cependant en-demeurer (1)

toujours

continuer (1)

jusqu' à ce que

amasser (1)

drachme

quand

se voir (3 ir)

riche

se mettre (4 ir)

pie m.

demande (1)

vizir m.

mariage m. faire (4 ir)

savoir

en

ce

faire (4 ir)

pièce f.

le

seir m.

épouser (1)

beau-père m.

promettre (4 ir)

amener (1)

chez moi

avoir (3 ir)

soin m.

inspirer (1)

respect m.

Pour cet effet

confiner (1)

appartement m.

visite f.

parler (1)

peu

mère f.

venir (2 ir)

assis

sofa m.

les larmes aux yeux

IDIOMATICAL EXERCISES. 115

fling herself at my feet, and beg of me to receive her into
se jeter (1) prier (1)
 my favour. Then, tired with her intreaties, I will, to
Alors de prière f.
 imprint in her more veneration for | my person, | draw up
imprimer (1) plus de moi retirer (1)
 my legs, and spurn her with my foot, | in such a manner ||
repousser (1) si vigoureusement
 that she shall fall down | a great distance | from the sofa.
tomber (1) bien loin

Alnaschar was so swallowed up in this chimerical vi-
absorber (1) dans chimérique c.
 sion, that he acted with his foot what he had in his
représenter (1)
 thoughts; and unluckily striking his basket of brittle-
pensée f. frapper (1) verre-
 ware, which was the foundation of all his grandeur, he
ric fondement m. grandeur f.
 kicked his glasses | out of | his shop into the street, and
jeter (1) de boutique f. dans rue f.
 broke them into ten thousand pieces.
briser (1) en morceau m.

“ Who are they that do not raise | visionary scenes
faire (4 ir) des châteaux
 “ in their minds? | Every one dreams | with his eyes open | ,
en l'air Chacun en veillant
 “ and nothing is more pleasing to us. On these occa-
rien plaire (4 ir) Dans
 “ sions, our souls are deluded by a soothing error; but does
emporter (1) flateur m, se f. mais
 “ some accident | recal our wandering senses, | immediately
nous fait-il rentrer en nous-mêmes
 “ we are the insignificant creatures we were before.”
céti-f m, ve f. auparavant.

THE END OF THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH EXERCISES.

FRENCH AND ENGLISH EXERCISES.

PART THE THIRD.

AS every Language has its Proprieties, Idioms, and Forms of Speaking peculiar to itself, which cannot be rendered Word for Word into any other Language, but with much Barbarity in some Places, or ridiculous Absurdities in others; in order to clear these Difficulties, and make the Learners observe what English Word or Expression is analogous to the French, it will be very proper, after they are well grounded in the Rules of Construction, to make them write the following Exercises, and then cause them to be very exact, in giving readily, without Book, Sentence by Sentence, the corrected English for the French, and *vice versa*.

These Exercises, as they are of all others the most difficult, so will they prove the most profitable; for by the Time the Scholars have carefully gone through them, according to the Method I, from my own Experience, recommend to others, they will have attained such a Facility in either translating or expressing their Thoughts in proper language, that they will be fit to be put to any Performance their Master shall think fit.

Exercises of bad French would have been introduced in this Third Part, for they are really useful, by shewing what is Wrong, in order to teach one to avoid it; but that they make so uncouth an appearance in Print: and it can be no manner of trouble to any Teacher to supply the want of them, by false reading of any good Author, and requiring of his Pupils to find the Faults, and rectify them by the Rules.

USE and SIGNIFICATION of *On*.

I. **T**HE Particle *On* is rendered into English several ways: sometimes by *One*; Exam. *On croiroit*, *One* would think. Sometimes by the *Personal Pronouns*, they or we; Exam. *On dit*, they say; *On voit*, we see. Sometimes also by the indeterminate words, *People, Men, &c.* Exam. *On s'imagine*, people, or men think; but it is more generally Englished by the *Pronoun it*, and converting the *Verb* that follows it, from the *active** voice into the *passive*;

E X A M P L E:

On croit que— *On* avoit dit que—
It is thought that—It had been said that—

T H E M E.

On raisonne toujours mal, quand on est possédé de quelque passion violente. *On* remarque tous les jours que les passions causent de grands désordres; cependant on ne cherche point à se garantir des surprises d'un ennemi si puissant, et si dangereux. *On* croit souvent que l'amitié qu'on a pour une personne riche et puissante est sincère et désintéressée, mais on ne peut le savoir | que lorsqu' | elle

* The *Active* voice, both in French and English, is made *Passive* by using the *Auxiliary Verb to Be* (être) with the *Participle* of the *Preterite* of a verb active, Exam. *On raporte*, It is reported; &c. See page 74.

118 FRENCH and ENGLISH

est dépouillée de ses biens et de son pouvoir; on démêle
 alors à quoi tenoit cette amitié, qu'on croyoit si pure.
strip riches to Perceive
then on was founded friendship so

II. If the Verb following the Particle On is a Verb Active, attended by a Substantive or Pronoun as its object, that Substantive or Pronoun must be made the subject of the Verb in English, and the Verb active changed into the passive voice ;

E X A M P L E :

On donnera demain des récompenses ;
To-morrow rewards shall be given.

T H Ê M E.

On donne plus souvent des bornes à sa reconnoissance,
to Set bounds gratitude
 qu'à ses desirs et à ses espérances. On ne méprise pas
than hope to Despise
 tous ceux qui ont des vices ; mais on méprise tous ceux
that but
 qui n'ont aucune vertu. On ne connoît le mal que font
no to Know harm to Occasion
 les passions, que lorsqu'il n'est plus tems de le prévenir.
but to Prevent
 Si l'on* se faisoit une idée de l'Evangile sur la vie de | la
to Form Gospel by
 plupart des | Chrétiens, on le croiroit plein de maximes
most Christian full
 | tout-à-fait | contraires à celles que Jésus Christ a établies.
quite which to Establish

* L'on is the same as on, with respect to its signification, but is to be used 1st. After words ending with a Vowel, such as ou, si, &c. 2dly. After the conjunct particle et (and) 3dly. Before Verbs beginning with com or con for the better sound's sake only ; Exam. et l'on se croit en sûreté ; &c.

USE and SIGNIFICATION of *Que*.

I. **T**HE Particle *que*, besides its general signification of that, is often used at the beginning and in the middle of a sentence, in lieu of several Particles, such as *où*, where; *avant*, before; *combien*, how; *pourquoi*, why; *comme*, as; &c. which are to be fully expressed in English*;

EXAMPLE:

Je ne le ferai point *que* vous ne veniez;
I will not do it unless you come.

THEME.

C'est à la Cour qu'on apprend les manières polies. Je
ne me croirai pas | ^{where} en sûreté | ^{polite ways of behaving.} que je n'aie obtenu son
consentement. ^{safe} Que je serois heureux si j'avois suivi les
^{consent} ^{how} ^{happy} ^{to Follow} conseils de mon père! ^{why} ^{to Spend} Que n'employez vous autant de
tems à éclairer et à cultiver votre esprit, que vous en
^{to Enlighten} ^{mind} ^{as} perdez à vous divertir et à paroître dans le monde.
^{to Lose} ^{make a figure}

II. *Que* relating to plus or moins, is rendered by than; but coming after a Verb that has ne prefixed to it, is to be englished by but, only, and sometimes by nothing but;

EXAMPLE:

Je ne vois que ce que j'ai vu;
I see nothing but what I have seen.

* It is also used instead of *tandis que*, or of *comme*, and even instead of *mais*; Exam. Il arriva *que* nous sortions, i. e. *tandis que* nous sortions, or *comme* nous sortions—*Que* si, au contraire, &c. but if, on the contrary, &c.

A
T H È M E.

Le monde récompense plus souvent les apparences du
to Reward mérite que le mérite même. On n'est jamais si aisément
appearance trompé, que quand on cherche à tromper les autres. Peu
to Deceive de gens sont sincères, et la sincérité que l'on voit d'ordi-
to Seek how if self never naire n'est qu'une fine dissimulation, pour attirer la con-
persons which com-
monly artful to Gain con-
fiance ou l'estime des autres. Il n'y a | que ceux qui
fidence It is sont méprisables, qui craignent d'être méprisés.
despicable to Despise.

III. *The Particle Que is sometimes a sign of the third person of the Imperative Mood, and then it is to be rendered by the Word let *, with a Conjunctive Pronoun after it;*

E X A M P L E:

S'il la trouvé, qu'il le garde;
If he has found it, let him keep it.

A
T H È M E.

Que les fautes des autres vous servent plutôt d'instruc-
fault rather tion, que de sujet de vous moquer d'eux. Si votre frère |
cause to Laugh at est dans le dessein | de se réconcilier avec moi, qu'il fasse
to Have a mind to Be reconciled to Make premièrement sa paix avec Dieu, qu'il s'humilie en sa
peace to Humble

* This Rule is also to be observed before the first Person of the Subjunctive Mood, when *que* serves to denote either Wishing or Imprecation;
 Exam. *Que je meure si je vous mens*, let me die if I tell you an untruth.

présence, qu'il prenne une ferme résolution de ne plus
to Take
 l'offencer à l'avenir; qu'il évite toutes les mauvaises com-
for the future to Shun bad
 pagnies, alors je le recevrai volontiers en mon amitié.
then willingly friendship.

It may be observed—1st. That the Particle que used after c'est is a contraction of parceque, and is to be rendered into English accordingly; Exam. C'est que nous allons trop doucement, it is because we go too softly; &c.—2dly. That que is a redundant Particle before non, oui, and si, terminating a sentence, Exam. Je dis que non, I say no, &c.—3dly. That que is used in an emphatical manner, before the last Substantive or Verb of a Sentence beginning with c'est; Exam. C'est un emploi très-ingrat que d'enseigner les Langues, &c.*

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of Y.

I. **T**HE Particle Y is sometimes used instead of a Substantive or Pronoun, which is mentioned in the first Part of the Sentence; in such a case it must be rendered into English by him, her, them, or it, as the sense directs; with one of these Particles, at, by, for, to, with, or in, set before;

E X A M P L E:

Il est très-rusé, ne vous y fiez pas;
 He is very cunning, don't trust to him.

* Except the pronoun *ce qui* or *ce que* should precede it; Exam. *Ce qui me fâche c'est qu'on me soupçonne d'y avoir eu part*; what grieves me is that I am suspected to have been concerned with it. *Ce que je prévois c'est que le Roi le chassera*; what I foresee is that the King will dismiss him; &c.

^
T H Ê M E.

Quelque découverte qu'on ait faite dans le monde, il
Whatever *made*
 y reste encore bien des choses inconnues. Quand nous
to Remain *many* *unknown*
 arrivons aux différens âges de la vie, nous y manquons
period *to Want*
 souvent d'expérience, malgré le nombre des années.
for all *year*

II. *Sometimes the Particle Y relates to places, and in this
 acceptation is to be englished by there, thither, or within ;*

E X A M P L E :

Il hait le Parc, ne l'y menez pas ;
He hates the Park, don't take him there.

^
T H Ê M E.

Quand irez vous en France? J'y étois l'année passée ;
When *last :*
 mais j'espère y retourner l'Été prochain : Je vous y ac-
to Go again *next* *to Ac-*
 compagnerai, si vous voulez ; car j'ai envie d'y aller. C'est
company *for* *a mind*
 le plus beau pays du monde ; on n'y ressent point ordinaire-
in the *to Feel*
 ment, ni les ardeurs de l'Été, ni les rigueurs de l'Hiver :
violent heat *rigour*
 le Printems couronné de fleurs, s'y unit à l'Automne
with
 chargée de fruit ; l'air y est pur, clair, et serein ; et les
loaded *serene*
 habitans y surpassent en politesse les autres nations.
inhabitants *to Exceed*

USE and SIGNIFICATION of *En*.

I. **T**HIS word *En** is used instead of repeating a Substantive or Pronoun that has been mentioned in the first part of the Sentence; and is to be rendered into English by any, some, him, her, them, or it, with one of these Particles of, for, by, with, about, set before it;

E X A M P L E :

Monfieur A. vous plait, car vous en parlez toujours;
You like Mr. A. for you are always speaking of him.

^A
T H E M E.

Si nous n'avions point de défauts, nous ne prendrions
^{no} pas tant de plaisir à en remarquer dans les autres. L'il-
^{so much} lusion des avarés est de prendre l'or et l'argent pour des
^{error} biens, au-lieu-que ce ne sont que des moyens pour en
^{riches} avoir. Quoiqu'on en pense, je dis qu'il est plus honteux
^{to Acquire} de se défier de ses amis, que d'en être trompé.
^{to Mistrust} ^{than} ^{deceivd.}

II. This supplying word (*en*) used in a sentence after either of these Adverbial Particles tant and autant, is a redundant particle in French, which is not to be expressed in English;

E X A M P L E :

J'ai autant de livres que vous en avez;
I have got as many books as you have.

* Observe that the Rule laid down here concerning *en* does not regard the Particle prepositive *en* (in or into) this being a supplying word that relates to persons, things, or places; and, if to the latter, is often expressed by *from thence*; Exam. *En venez-vous?* Do you come from thence; &c.

^
T H Ê M E.

Vous n'avez pas tant d'argent que j'en ai. Ils n'ont pas
money
 autant de tems pour se divertir qu'il en a. Avez vous au-
time as
 tant de plaisir à Londres, que vous en aviez à Paris? N'a-
in
 t-on pas plus de liberté ici, que l'on en a dans votre pays?
more in country?

This Particle is also redundant in many other cases, such as en donner à garder; en faire accroire; and the like; serving only, in these expressions, to change the signification of the verb; as to the use of y and en, see the Gram. p. 298.

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *le* and *ne*.

I. **T**HE supplying Particle *le* or *l'* is frequently used, in French, instead of a Substantive, Adjective, or Participle; on which occasions it is either rendered by the Particle *so*, or not expressed at all, which is most commonly the case;

E X A M P L E:
 Est-il Médecin? Oui, il l'est;
 Is he a Physician? Yes, he is.

^
T H Ê M E.

Avez-vous été chirurgien dans quelque hospital? Oui,
surgeon
 je l'ai été. Pourriez-vous remplir la place de ce médecin?
to Act in physician
 Oui, je le pourrois. Nous étions occupés hier toute la
could day
 journée, et vous ne l'étiez pas. Vous n'êtes pas aussi sen-
so
 sible que je le suis, au malheur qui vous menace.
misfortune to Threaten.

II. *The word ne is left out in English, when prefixed to the Particle le, if both ne and le are preceded by some comparative expressions denoted in French by plus, moins, meilleur, &c. See the Rules upon Comparison, p. 20, Rule III.*

E X A M P L E:

Il est plus estimé que vous ne l'êtes;
He is more esteemed than you are.

T H E M E.

Votre cousin est plus accoutumé au travail que je ne le
accustomed then
 suis; son frère n'est-il pas meilleur écrivain que vous ne
brother writer
 l'êtes? Sa femme est plus grande qu'il ne l'est. Sa sœur
wife tall
 est-elle meilleure écolière que nous ne le sommes?
better

III. *The same Particle ne is also to be omitted in English, after the Adjective autre, the Conjunctive Particle à-moins que, and any of the Tenses of the Impersonal Verb il y a;*

E X A M P L E:

A-moins que vous ne me l'ordonniez;
Unless you order it me.

T H E M E.

Il est tout autre, à l'entendre parler, que je ne le croyois
quite another person than to Think
 Ne faites point cela, à-moins que vous ne vouliez le scanda-
to Do to Be willing
 liser. Il y a plus de dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.
it is than since to See

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il y a*.

I. **T**HE Impersonal Verb *il y a* or *y a-t-il*, is used to denote a quantity of Time, Space, and Number.—When it implies a quantity of time, it is to be rendered in English by *it is*, or *is it*, and the particle *que* following it, by *since*;

E X A M P L E:

Y a-t-il long-tems que votre père est parti ?
Is it long since your father has been gone out ?

A
T H E M E.

Il y a plus de 287 ans que l'on établit une sévère inquisition en Espagne, contre l'exercice de toute autre religion que celle de l'église Romaine. Combien y a-t-il que Charles I. roi d'Angleterre, fut décapité ? Il y a plus de 136 ans ; ce fut sur un échafaud dressé, près des fenêtres de la grande salle de White-hall, l'an 1649. Y a-t-il long-tems qu'on a découvert l'Amérique ? Il y a plus de 294 ans ; elle fut découverte par Christophe Colombe, Génois, pour lors au service du roi d'Espagne, l'an 1492.

year to Establish Spain exercise but church How long king beheaded it scaffold raised window banqueting-house long to Discover it by at that time

II. *When the Impersonal Verb il y a is used to denote a quantity of space, without specifying the number of leagues, miles, &c. it is to be turned into English by it is. Exam. Il n'y a pas loin de chez vous à la Bourse, It is not far from your house to the Exchange. But if there is any parti-*

cular quantity or number mentioned, it is to be rendered by there is for the Singular, and there are for the Plural;

E X A M P L E :

Il y a près de 30 millions d'ames en France;
There are near 30 millions of souls in France;

T H E M E.

Quelque différence qu'il paroisse entre les fortunes, il y
Whatever to Appear station of life
 a néanmoins une certaine compensation de biens et de
nevertheless good
 maux qui les rend égales. Il y a bien des personnes qui
evil equal many
 aiment les livres comme des meubles, plus pour parer
to Like to Have household-goods set off
 leur maison, que pour orner leur esprit. Il y a du mérite
to Adorn mind merit
 sans élévation, mais il n'y a pas d'élévation sans quelque
exaltation some
 mérite. Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris? Il y a 99
How far London
 lieues, ou deux cens quatre-vingt dix-sept milles*.

III. *If the Impersonal Verb il y a is attended by a Substantive as its object, this Substantive may be made, in English, the Subject of the Personal Verb following, instead of the relative qui, which commonly precedes it; and in this case, neither il y a, nor the relative, are to be expressed in English;*

E X A M P L E :

Il y a des peines qui sont salutaires;
Some pains are wholesome.

* The distance from London to Dover is 72 Miles; from Dover to Calais 21 Miles; and from Calais to Paris 204 Miles.

^
T H Ê M E.

Il y a peu de choses qui soient impossibles dans ce monde; l'application pour les faire réussir nous manque plus que les moyens. Il n'y a rien qui soit si difficile à persuader que le mépris des richesses, si l'on ne tire ses raisons du fond de la religion Chrétienne. Il y a des gens qui plaisent avec des défauts, et d'autres qui sont dégoûtans avec du mérite. Il y a des actions qui paroissent ridicules, et dont les raisons cachées sont cependant très-sages.

few to Be in for to Succeed to Fail means nothing difficult contempt to Deduce from people to Please fault disagreeable some to Appear private nevertheless

IV. *When the Word en is used with il y a*, as it generally refers to a number, the Verb must be rendered by there is, for the Singular number, and there are for the Plural;*

E X A M P L E:

Il n'y en a qu'un; il y en a deux;
There is but one; there are two of them.

^
T H Ê M E.

Le chemin qui mène à la vie est étroit, et il y en a peu qui le trouvent. Tous ceux qui s'appellent Chrétiens prétendent à la vie éternelle, mais il y en a bien peu qui

to Lead narrow few to Find to Call everlasting very

* Observe, that when *y* and *en* are used together in the same sentence, *y* is always placed before *en*, and both are set immediately before the Verb; except when it is used affirmatively in the Imperative Mood, in which case it is placed after; EXAMPLE, Mettons *y en*, *let us put some in it.*

qui veulent souffrir la moindre chose pour la mériter.
to Be willing least to Deserve
 Quand | il est question d'aspirer à | quelques emplois, ou à
men have in view employment
 quelques dignités temporelles, il n'y en a point qui ne soient
temporal
 disposés à souffrir toute sorte de peine pour les mériter.
ready any kind pain

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il faut*.

I. **T**HE Impersonal Verb *Il faut* denotes the necessity of doing something, and is to be rendered, if before an Infinitive, by it is necessary, or by must, with either one, I, we, he, or she, for its subject, according to the sense of the speech ;

E X A M P L E :

Il faut bien vivre pour bien mourir ;
We must live well to die well.

THEME.

Avant que de désirer fortement une chose, il faudroit
Before eagerly
 examiner quel est le bonheur de celui qui la possède.
to Examine happiness to Possess.
 Il ne faut pas regarder quel bien nous fait un ami, mais
to Consider to Do
 seulement le désir qu'il a de nous en faire. Pour donner
only
 une véritable idée du repos, il faut dire qu'il est comme
true idea rest as
 une béatitude de l'ame qui le console de toutes ses pertes,
blessedness to Comfort loss
 et qui lui tient lieu de toutes sortes de biens.
to Serve instead riches.

II. *If the Verb depending on the impersonal il faut, is a Verb active, attended by either a Substantive or Pronoun, as its object; that Substantive or Pronoun may become in English the subject of the impersonal, and the Verb be made passive;*

E X A M P L E:

Il faut instruire soigneusement les enfans;
Children must be carefully instructed.

T H E M E.

Il faut l'avouer de bonne foi, qu'il y a bien des foibles
to Confess sincerely many
à réformer dans l'homme; et que l'on fait à tous mo-
in to Commit
mens de grandes fautes, parcequ'on | se laisse trop aller |
fault to Give way too much
à son penchant et à ses passions. La plupart des | héros
inclination most
sont comme de certains tableaux; pour les estimer, il ne
as picture to Esteem
faut pas les regarder de trop près. Quand l'occasion
to Look at too When opportunity
se présente, il ne faut pas la laisser échaper.
to Offer to Let to Escape.

III. *When the Impersonal Verb il faut is followed by the Particle que, with the next Verb in the Subjunctive, the following tenses, il faut, il falloit, il falut, are to be rendered by must; the future tense, il faudra, by shall be obliged; and this Imperfect il faudroit, by should, with the Substantive or Pronoun following que, set before them as their subject;*

E X A M P L E:

Il faudra que je m'en serve;
I shall be obliged to use it.

^A
T H Ê M E.

L'empereur Tibère avoit une grande modération à
Tiberius
 souffrir les mauvais discours que l'on tenoit sur sa con-
to Suffer to Hold con-
 duite, et il disoit { à ce propos, | que dans une ville libre,
duet on this account city free
 comme Rome, il falloit que les langues et les esprits
tongue mind
 fussent libres. Je ne disconviens pas que tous les peuples
to Deny all
 ne soient capables de vertus héroïques, mais il faut que
capable heroical
 vous conveniez aussi que les Romains ont surpassé, en cela,
to Grant also to Excel
 toutes les autres nations; c'est ce que les historiens rapportent.
other it is to Relate

IV. *The impersonal il faut* is used sometimes before a Substantive without any Verb depending on it, in which case it is rendered by making the Substantive the subject of the Verb, and using the Auxiliary to Be with such of these Adjectives, necessary, requisite, or needful, as the sense requires;*

E X A M P L E:

Il faut de l'argent pour plaider.
Money is requisite to go to law.

^A
T H Ê M E.

Il faut peu de choses pour rendre | le sage | heureux,
few to make considering man.

* If a Pronoun conjunctive is also used between *il* and *faut*, which denotes one's present want, the conjunctive is to be changed into a personal, to be made the subject of either the Verb *want* or *must have*. Ex. *Il me faut de l'argent*; I want or I must have money; *Il leur faut*, they want, &c.

mais rien ne peut rendre un | fou | content. Il y a de
^{nothing} certains cas, où il ne faut qu'une | ^{senseless man} action de vigueur | pour
^{case} | faire taire | la médisance. Il ne faut qu'une ^{resolute action} punition
^{to Silence} d'une trop grande ^{slandering} sévérité pour faire perdre aux ^{punishment} écoliers
^{severity} toute l'estime qu'ils ont pour leur maître, et pour ^{to Lose} ralentir
^{esteem} leur zèle. Il falloit bien des amis pour ^{for} obtenir cela.
^{zeal.} ^{friend} ^{to Obtain}

V. *The Impersonal verb il faut is also used at the end of a sentence, either with the Pronoun ce que or the Particle comme before it; in which case it is to be rendered into English by should, and sometimes by should do, or should be;*

E X A M P L E:

Cela n'est pas fait comme il faut;
That is not done as it should be.

T H E M E.

La véritable éloquence consiste à dire tout ce qu'il faut,
^{true} et à ne dire que ce qu'il faut. J'eus beaucoup de peine
^{to say} à faire votre paix avec votre père, il avoit absolument
^{but} résolu de ne pas vous pardonner; c'est pourquoi prenez
^{much} garde de* l'offenser | à l'avenir | et ayez soin de vous com-
^{add} porter comme il faut. Refaites cet ouvrage, il n'est pas
^{care} comme il faut; et s'il me plaît je vous récompenserai.
^{to Resolve} ^{to Forgive} ^{therefore}
^{have} ^{to Do ag. in} ^{work}
^{to Plead} ^{to Reward}

* The English idiom requires *not* in this expression; see p. 51.

USE and SIGNIFICATIONS of *Il fait*.

I. **T**H E *impersonal Verb Il fait, used with Substantives or Adjectives denoting the disposition of the Air or Weather, is to be rendered in English by it is, and sometimes by there is ;*

E X A M P L E:

Il fait bien froid, et il fait brouillard ;
It is very cold, and there is a fog.

T H Ê M E.

Je vais vous dire une remarque que je fis dernièrement ;
dans l'espace de 24 heures, il fit quatre sortes de tems, qui
auroient fort bien assorti les quatre saisons de l'année :
la matinée auroit été propre pour un | jour de Printems, [
vers midi, il fit assez chaud pour un Eté d'Angleterre ; sur
le soir le ciel se couvrit, il fit un tems d'Automne ; et la
nuit, il tomba une pluie assez froide, pour un tems d'Hiver.

The same Impersonal (il fait) construed with one of these Adjectives bon, mauvais, meilleur, or dangereux, followed by the name of a place, is also to be rendered in English by the Impersonal verb it is ; Example : Il fait bon ici ; it is good being here ; il fait cher vivre à Londres, it is dear being in London ; il fait dangereux sur mer, it is dangerous at sea ; &c. Before jour, nuit, soleil, and clair de lune, it is likewise resolved by it is, &c. Exam. Il fait jour à présent à cinq heures, it is day-light now at five o'clock ; il fesoit clair de lune à minuit, it was moon-light at twelve, last night ; &c.

F R E N C H

IDIOMS AND GALLICISMS.

PART THE FOURTH.

THE Idiom of the French Language chiefly consists in the use and different acceptations of certain words, which, for want of being properly taken notice of in Dictionaries, perplex young learners, in either their construing or translating from the French, as much as any other difficulty they meet with in our language; I have therefore selected those most in use, which being illustrated in a concise manner, are disposed in the following alphabetic order, for the more ready finding of them.

A, *avoir.*

THE verb *Avoir* signifies, in its usual acceptation, to Have; but when we speak of being cold or hot, it is to be rendered by the Verb to Be, with the part, said to be cold or hot, set before it; see the *Practical French Grammar*, p. 162.

E X A M P L E:

Elle a si froid aux mains que, &c.
Her hands are so cold that, &c.

^A T H E M E.

J'ai si froid à la main, que je ne puis écrire. Vous
cold that can write
 avez souvent froid à la tête, car vous n'ôtez votre
often head for to Pull off

chapeau que rarement; | au contraire | j'ai fort chaud
bat f. idiom on the contrary sur une
à la tête; mais je ne | me gêne | jamais avec mes amis;
bat to Stand upon ceremonies with
autrement, quel plaisir y auroit-il d'être avec eux?
or else

B, beau.

The word beau does not always signify fine, for when it is used after the Verb avoir, it serves to denote that one does a thing to no purpose, and it is to be englisht, frequently with the auxiliary verb Avoir, by altho', whatsoever, for all that, &c.

E X A M P L E:

J'eus beau l'attendre, il ne vint pas;
Although I had waited for him, he did not come.

A

T H E M E.

J'ai eu beau faire et beau dire, votre adresse l'a emporté,
to Do to Say cunning to Triumph
et vous avez trouvé moyen | d'avoir raison. | On a
to Find to justify one's self
beau chasser le chagrin, il revient toujours. Vous avez
to Drive out to Return again
beau lui donner des avis, c'est tems perdu, vous dis-je.
to Give advice lost to Tell

C, connoître.

The Verb connoître, when said of material things, that are the objects of our senses, is to be rendered in English by to Know; but if it is said of things that are the objects of our intellectual faculties, the verb to Distinguish is to be used;

E X A M P L E:

Je connois cet homme de vue;
I know this man by sight.

^
T H Ê M E.

Le langage pur et l'élégance ne se trouvent guères que
diction elegancy to be found rarely
 parmi les courtisans, et encore est-ce parmi les plus déli-
among courtiers among curi-
 cats, qui savent connoître le bon usage. Comme il con-
ous to know how use As
 noissoit fort bien les meilleurs, il les choisit pour lui.
best to Pick.

D, devoir.

The Verb devoir, being said of a debt, signifies to Owe: but implying an obligation or necessity of doing a thing, is to be rendered into English by either ought or must; but always by should, for the Imperfect of the Subjunctive-mood;*

E X A M P L E:

Vous devez penser sérieusement à cela;
You ought to think seriously on that.

^
T H Ê M E.

Vous devriez écrire à votre père, pour lui | faire savoir |
to Write father to Let know
 que vous | avez besoin | de livres. A table, et dans l'é-
to Want book
 cole les écoliers doivent être tranquilles, et aucun d'eux
scholar still none
 ne doit parler, excepté celui que le maître a nommé.
but appointed.

* But the same verb (*Devoir*) serving to express an action to be done, in which case it is always prefixed to a verb in the Infinitive, is then to be rendered by the Auxiliary *to Be*; Exam. *Je dois aller demain à Londres*, I am to go to London to-morrow: see the note inserted in Part I. p. 57.

E, être.

The general signification of the Verb être is to Be ; but it must be rendered by the auxiliary to Have, before the Participle Preterite of the Reflexive Verbs ; see the Gram. p. 102.

E X A M P L E :

Je me suis promené dans le Parc ;
I have walked in the Park.

^A
T H Ê M E.

C'est une maxime constante chez toutes les nations,
maxim with nation
 que les hommes ne sont plus ce qu'ils étoient autrefois ;
man more formerly ;
 et qu'ils se sont avilis et dégradés. Votre frère s'est | pré-
grown degenerate corrupt. brother to Make
 crit | des règles qui lui seront d'une très-grande utilité.
to one's self rule very advantage.

F, faire.

The Verb faire, besides its general signification of to Make, is liable to others, as may be seen by the following sentences ;

E X A M P L E :

Il tâche de faire de l'argent ;
He endeavours to raise some money.

^A
T H Ê M E.

Il me | fera mourir | si je ne vous mets entre ses mains ;
to Put to death to Deliver up
 que ferai-je ? En sauvant la vie à un innocent, vous ne
to Do? life
 le trompez que pour l'empêcher de faire un grand crime :
to Deceive to Hinder to Commit
 ainsi, | faites semblant | de ne point savoir où je suis.
to Pretend to Know.

G, gens.

The words Gens, is masculine when it comes before its Adjective, and feminine when the Adjective comes first; but whether the word Gens comes before or after its Adjective, if another Adjective or Participle should follow them, this last must be of the masculine Gender: it is generally rendered in English, either by people, or by men, according to the sense;

E X A M P L E:

Il y a de *sottes* gens, parmi les gens *parvenus*;
 There are *silly* men, among *exalted* people.

T H Ê M E.

Je n'aimerois pas à vivre parmi les Espagnols, car ce
to Love to Live Spaniards
 sont des gens remplis de malice; mais je ne m'ennuyerois
full Let to Be tired
 jamais de vivre avec les Anglois, parce que ce sont de fort
well English
 bonnes gens. Les vieilles gens se plaignent toujours.
good old to Complain

H, honnête.

These words honnête and honnêteté are used in French either to denote the observance of good manners, or some particular virtue; and are to be rendered accordingly;

E X A M P L E:

Tout le monde dit qu'il est fort honnête;
 Every body says that he is very civil.

T H Ê M E.

Elle est belle sans défaut, fière sans orgueil, tendre et
beautiful defect, lofty pride,
 empressée avec honnêteté, et enjouée avec modestie. Ceux
observant chastity spirightly

dont la naissance ne | répond | pas à la dignité de leurs
birth to Be equal
 charges, doivent être civils, honnêtes, et obligeans.
poft modest

I, imaginer.

Though the Verb imaginer is always used in French to denote some operation of the mind, yet its application is to be minded before it is rendered into English, as it stands sometimes for inventer, and sometimes for penser or croire;

E X A M P L E:

Ce plan est très mal imaginé;
This scheme is very badly contrived.

T H Ê M E.

Avez-vous imaginé, pour notre affaire, quelque chose de
to Think on aff ir
 favorable. C'est une chose facile, bien imaginée, et la
advantageous. not difficult, invented
 plus aisée du monde à exécuter, ainsi ne la différez point
easy to Execute to put off
 à un autre jour. Imaginez-vous l'état où je me trouve.
other to Think on situation

J, jouer.

The verb jouer with the Article du, de la, or des, before the name of a musical instrument is to Play upon; but used figuratively, before any other Substantive, it is to be rendered by to Play with or to Use, without any Article expressed;

E X A M P L E:

Préparez vous à jouer des mains;
Get ready to use your hands.

T H Ê M E.

Voyant que ni ses larmes ni ses conseils ne servoient de
to Find tear advice to Avail

rien, il prit le parti de jouer d'adresse. Je suis certain
 que, dans pareil cas, il n'y en a pas un parmi vous,
 quelque prudent qu'il soit, qui n'eût joué des couteaux.
resolution *stratagem* *among*
cautious *sword.*

L, laisser.

The Verb laisser being construed with ne and pas, attended by de, denotes always affirmation in the next Verb; which may be rendered into English several ways, generally comprizing one of these Particles, still, nevertheless, yet, for all that, &c.

E X A M P L E:

Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai *;
 Yet or nevertheless that is true.

T H E M E.

Malgré tout ce que | je lui ai dit, il ne laisse pas de le
For all that
 faire. Vous ne savez que faire de ces bagatelles, elles ne
to Do. *to Know* *trifle;*
 laissent pas d'avoir leur usage. Il faut donc consentir à
use. *therefore*
 une chose qu'on ne laisseroit pas de faire sans vous.
without

M, même.

The word même is susceptible of three different significations, if it is a Pronoun, it is to be rendered by self, for the singular, and selves for the plural; when used as an Adjective, by same; lastly, if it be employed in the sense of an adverbial Particle, by even; which distinctions must be attended to;

* We frequently use *que* in expressions of this kind, for elegance sake only. Ex. m. *Cela ne laisse pas que d'être joli*, nevertheless that is pretty; in which phrase, and the like, as mentioned before, in the 3d observation on *que*, p. 121, this particle *que* occasions no difference in the translation.

E X A M P L E :

S'il ne le fait pas, je le ferai moi-même ;
If he does not do it, I'll do it myself.

^A
T H È M E.

Il est bien dur pour moi que je ne puisse pas vous
very hard plaire ; je crois vraiment, que quand même je ferois l'im-
to Please possible, tous mes efforts seroient vains. Je ferai la même
to Believe truly chose pour vous, que vous avez daigné de faire pour moi.
possibilities endeavour tho'
that

N, ne.

The Particle ne implies, in general, a negation, and is often englisbed conjointly with another Particle of denial which it has a reference to; such as ne and jamais, (never) &c. but if it depends on que, from which it is always separated by one or more words, it is rendered by only, but, or nothing but;

E X A M P L E :

Il n'est que dix heures et demie ;
It is but half an hour past ten.

^A
T H È M E.

Nous n'avouons jamais nos défauts que par vanité. Il
to Confess n'appartient qu'aux | fault grands | through d'avoir de grands défauts.
to Belong Nous oublions aisément nos fautes, lorsqu'elles ne sont
to Forget sues que de nous. Il n'y a rien que je ne fasse pour vous.
to Know error, nothing to Do

O, ou.

The Particle ou, not accented, is an alternative word, Englished by either and or; if accented thus, où, and refers to a place, by where, whither, whence; but when it relates to a Substantive mentioned before, it is to be rendered into English by wherein, in which, or to which, according to its sense;

E X A M P L E:

Si vous saviez l'état où il est;

If you knew the condition in which he is.

T H Ê M E.

Que dirai-je de ce siècle, où je vois un libraire tour-
to Say menté par une foule de age, | petits esprits |, sans goût ou sans
er-d expérience; où je le vois, en quelque façon, contraint, ou
wretched scribblers, d'écouter leurs discours insipides, ou de s'attirer des insultes?
respect
listen to

P, penser.

The Verb penser is often used in the Preterite, or conjointly with the Present Tense of the auxiliary Verb avoir, before a Verb in the Infinitive, to denote what was upon the point of being done; in which case it is to be rendered by to Be like;

E X A M P L E:

La semaine passée, j'ai pensé mourir;

Last week, I was like to die.

T H Ê M E.

Nous pensâmes nous noyer en traversant la rivière.
to Be drowned to Cross river.
 N— a pensé être tué ce matin d'une | tuile tombée | de
killed with tile that fell
 dessus le toit d'une maison: je l'ai bien grondé, et j'ai même
top to Scold
 pensé le battre, mais, heureusement je ne l'ai pas fait.
to Beat luckily

Q, *quitte.*

The Adjective quitte, being said of a debt, is to be rendered into English by quit or clear; and of getting out of a bad affair or trouble, by free or rid; but in many cases its construction is pretty difficult, as it cannot be translated literally;

E X A M P L E:

Il en fut quitte pour la peur;
Fear was his only punishment.

T H Ê M E.

Sa blessure étoit si grande, et parut si dangereuse, qu'on
wound
 douta d'abord s'il en réchaperoit; cependant il en a été
at first to recover
 quitte pour garder le lit pendant deux ou trois mois. Son
to keep for month
 antagoniste en fut quitte pour une égratignure à la main.
scratch band.

R, *rendre.*

The Verb rendre used before these two Substantives service and justice, is to be rendered into English by to Do, and not by to Render, which is the literal signification of it;

E X A M P L E:

Vous me rendrez un grand service;
You will do me a great service.

T H Ê M E.

Je prens la liberté de venir vous prier d'une grâce, et si
to Take to Beg favour
 vous | avez la bonté | de me l'accorder, vous me rendrez
to Be so kind as to Grant
 le plus grand service du monde. Monsieur, s'il est en
world
 mon pouvoir de vous rendre service, je le ferai volontiers.
power to Do

S, sentir.

The Verb sentir is rendered into English by to Feel or to Smell, according as the thing, the object of the sense affected, is; it is used also to express some perceptions of the mind;

E X A M P L E:

Il lui fera sentir sa colère;
He'll make him feel his anger.

A

T H E M E.

Il vaut mieux qu'un soldat sente la poudre à canon
to Be better soldier gun-powder
 que l'ambre. Après cela, Sancho reprit sa bourse avec
amber to Take again
 tant de joie qu'il ne se sentoit pas de sa chute. Son maître
so much fall
 le sentant | en état | de marcher, en tira bon augure.
able to Look upon as omen.

T, traiter.

The Verb traiter, implying to Regale, is to be rendered by to treat or entertain; but if it implies either an outrageous behaviour, as traiter mal, or a friendly usage, as Traiter avec amitié, &c. it is to be expressed by the verb to Use;

E X A M P L E:

Je vous traite en ami;
I entertain you like a friend;

A

T H E M E.

Si vous êtes plus diligent que vous n'avez été, je vous
more thus
 traiterai | avec amitié; | mais si vous continuez d'être
in a friendly manner to Continue

parefſeux, je vous traiterai avec la dernière ſévérité. Si

^{idle} Dieu nous traitoit ſévérement, que deviendrions nous?
^{God} ^{with ſeverity} ^{greateſt} ^{to Become}

V, venir.

The Verb venir, followed by the Particle de and another Verb in the Infinitive Mood, ſerves to denote a thing juſt done, and is to be engliſhed by either to Be juſt, or to Have juſt, in their proper tenſe, and according to the ſenſe of the Sentence;

E X A M P L E:

Je viens d'arriver de campagne;
I am juſt arrived from the country:

△

T H E M E.

Nous venions de commencer quand il entra. Le Roi
^{to Begin} ^{when} vient de le nommer à cet Evêché. Vous | ne ſauriez |
^{to Name} ^{bishoprick.} ^{cannot} lui parler, parcequ'il vient de partir pour Londres. Je
^{becauſe} ^{to Set out} n'oſai lui dire la raiſon du parti que je venois de prendre.
^{to Dare} ^{reſolution} ^{to Take}

Obſerve, that when any of the Tenſes of the Verb venir is followed by the Particle à, and a verb in the Infinitive Mood, it denotes ſometimes a thing which is or was going to be done, according to the Tenſe the verb is in; and, in ſuch a caſe, it may be reſolved in Engliſh by a correſponding Tenſe of the verb to Begin; Exam. Quand il vint à parler, tout le monde ſe tut; when he began to ſpeak, every body was ſilent: &c. But, if it ſhould ſerve to indicate only the poſſibility there is for the action, denoted by the following verb, to paſs, it is then engliſhed by to Chance or to Happen; Exam. Je ſerois perdu, ſi Mr. B— venoit à ſavoir cela, I ſhould be undone, if Mr. B— ſhould happen to know that; &c.

GALLICISMS.

THESE are some particular French expressions, which are very difficult to be understood by Learners, as they cannot be rendered into English *verbatim*. These difficulties are not peculiar to the French language; but common to all others; besides, in these, and other such phrases, the delicacy of a language does so much consist, that it is impossible to exhibit one's thoughts, with propriety and perspicuity, without being conversant with them. The following Gallicisms may serve as Examples.

THESE expressions d'aujourd'hui en huit, and d'aujourd'hui en quinze, are gallicisms which are to be rendered into English by this day se'nnight, and this day fort'night;

A
T H E M E.

Je crois que j'irai en campagne d'aujourd'hui en huit,
to Go country
 et j'espère revenir d'aujourd'hui en quinze. Je suis per-
to Come back sure
 suadé que quand | une fois | vous y serez, vous ne re-
once
 viendrez pas si-tôt. Je vous donne ma parole, que d'au-
so soon word
 jourd'hui en quinze, si je me porte bien, je viendrai vous
to come
 voir. | Quand est-ce que | votre frère ira en France ? Il
When to
 espère partir de Lundi en huit, s'il fait beau tems.
to Expect on Monday weather.

This expression Avoir la bonté de, is englished by these words to Be so kind as to, with respect to the proper Tense;

T H Ê M E.

Je vous prie d'avoir la bonté de me dire comment vous
 appelez cela en François. Si vous avez la bonté de
 m'accorder cette grâce, il n'y a rien que je ne fasse pour
 vous en témoigner ma reconnoissance. J'espère que vous
 aurez la bonté de me recommander à vos amis. A moins
 que votre frère n'ait la bonté de me prêter un cheval, pour
 deux ou trois jours, je ne saurois y aller cette semaine.

This expression Aimer mieux, used thro' different Tenses and Persons, as j'aime mieux, j'aimerois mieux, &c. may be rendered by to Choose rather, &c. tho' I had rather, &c. is often used for the Indicative and Subjunctive Mood;

T H Ê M E.

J'aime mieux | me relacher de | quelque chose, que
 d'avoir un procès avec un homme litigieux. N'aimeriez
 vous pas mieux rester ici ou en Europe, que de retourner
 aux Indes orientales? J'aimerois mieux souffrir quelque
 petite injure d'un ami, que de me brouiller avec lui; quoique
 j'aimasse mieux mourir, que de passer pour poltron.

Speaking of some distemper or ailment, we make use of Avoir mal, with the Article au, à la, or aux, before a Substantive,

and is rendered by to Have a pain in, if the disorder be inwardly; but by to Have a sore on, if it be outwardly;

T H E M E.

Pourquoi ne vintes-vous pas hier, comme vous me l'aviez promis? J'avois mal à la tête, c'est pourquoi ma mère ne voulut pas me permettre de sortir. Où est votre frère, qu'il n'est pas venu avec vous? Il a mal à la jambe, et il est obligé de garder le lit. Je n'ai pu écrire mon thème, parce que j'avois mal au doigt. Mon cousin seroit venu avec moi, mais il est indisposé; il a mal à l'estomac.

Why to Come as to Promise would to Go out. brother with l. g. to Keep b. d. to Write exercise because cousin but

These expressions, c'en est fait de moi—de toi—and the like; are to be rendered into English by I am undone, thou art undone, &c. used in the proper Tense, Person and Number; tho' they are always used impersonally in French;

T H E M E.

C'en est fait de lui, si vous n'avez pitié de sa condition. C'en étoit fait de nous, si nous avions perdu ce Billet de banque. C'en eût été fait de moi, si vous ne m'aviez pas prêté de l'argent. C'en sera bientôt fait de vous, si vous ne quittez la boisson et le jeu. Je crois que c'en seroit fait de moi, si je perdois mon père et ma mère.

if to Take pity on to Lose bank-note to Lend money. to Leave off drinking gaming. to Think to Lose

This expression demeurer en repos, is to be rendered by to Be quiet, or still, with respect to its proper Tense, &c.

^
T H Ê M E.

Vous ne demeurez jamais en repos, que vous n'ayez
fait quelque mal. Demeurez en repos, ou bien je vous
punirai. Si vous ne demeurez en repos, je vous ferai
repentir de votre folie. Vous ne vouliez pas demeurer
en repos, quand je vous l'ai ordonné; vous voyez | à pré-
sent | ce qu'il vous arrive. Si vous eussiez demeuré en
repos, vous ne vous seriez point attiré cette disgrâce-là.

*This phrase il ne faut pas s'étonner, is rendered into Eng-
lish by it is no wonder, used impersonally, through all the Tenses;*

^
T H Ê M E.

Il ne faut pas s'étonner si nous prospérons si peu, puis-
qu' | au lieu | de servir Dieu, nous servons le Démon
par notre mauvaise conduite, par notre irréligion, et par
le peu d'amitié que nous portons à notre prochain; il ne
faudroit pas s'étonner si Dieu détruisoit le monde, car il
n'a jamais été si corrompu qu'il l'est à présent.

*This expression, je souhaiterois pouvoir, in the beginning
of a period, ought to be expressed in English by I wish I could;*

T H Ê M E.

Je foudiaiterois pouvoir engager mon père à me
 laisser apprendre | le François, | je l'apprendrois de vous.
to Let French of
 Je foudiaiterois pouvoir faire connoiffance avec Monfr.
to Get acquainted
 votre frère, car c'eft un honnête homme. Je foudiaiterois
for best
 pouvoir vous fervir, je le ferois de tout mon cœur. Je
to Serve, to Do heart.
 foudiaiterois pouvoir faire ce que vous defirez de moi.
to Do to Desire

This French expreffion, il ne tient qu'à vous, is to be rendered into English by it is in your power; the Verb is impersonal, and is used through all the Tenses of each Mood;

T H Ê M E.

Il ne tient qu'à vous d'être heureux, car vous avez les
 meilleurs parens du monde. Il ne tenoit qu'à vous d'être
best world
 bon écolier, car vous avez affez d'esprit. Il ne tiendrait
scholar, understanding.
 qu'à vous de vous réconcilier avec Madame N— car elle
to Be reconciled
 | eft impatiente | de renouveler amitié avec vous. Il ne
longs to Renew
 tiendra qu'à vous de me recommander à vos amis. Il n'eut
to Recommend
 tenu qu'à votre tuteur de vous | faire tort. |
guardian to Wrong.

These words, il me tarde de, are to be rendered into English by I long to; but this French expreffion is only used in the Present and Imperfect Tenses of the Indicative Mood;

A
T H E M E.

Il me tarde de vous donner ce que je vous dois, car je
to Give n'aime pas à devoir à personne. Ne vous tarde-t-il pas
to Love d'aller en campagne pour | mettre ordre à | vos affaires?
to Be in debt with country to Settle
 Il me tardoit de voir votre père, pour lui dire combien
to See vous méritiez d'être loué de votre diligence. Il lui tardoit
to Tell de vous voir. Il me tarde d'être parfait dans la langue
to Deserve praised for perfect language
 Françoisse, car c'est la langue des savans, et de toutes les
for learned men, all
 personnes du monde les plus spirituelles, et les plus polies.
world most ingenious, polite.

The manner of rendering this expression trouver à redire à, is by to find fault with, a due attention being given to the Tense, Person, and Number which the Verb is in ;

A
T H E M E.

Momus trouvoit à redire que le taureau eût les cornes
bull born
 au dessus des yeux, et disoit, qu'il devoit les avoir au des-
eye, ought
 sous, afin qu'il vit mieux où il frapoit. Je ne puis trou-
to See to Strike.
 ver à redire à | tout ce que | vous faites ; et ce que je
anything
 blamerois en un autre, me paroît en vous une vertu. Vos
to Blame to Appear
 amis, qui trouvent beaucoup à redire à la démarche que
friend to Find step
 vous allez faire, sont plus à plaindre que vous.
to Be pined.

This expression rendre des actions de grâces, is to be rendered into English by to return or give thanks, used in such Tense, Person, and Number, as the sense directs;

A
T H Ê M E.

Après avoir fait un grand massacre des ennemis, il se
mit à genoux, au milieu du champ de bataille, et rendit
des actions de grâces pour la victoire qu'il venoit de
remporter. Nous devrions tous les jours louer le Seigneur,
et lui rendre, avec ferveur, des actions de grâces, pour
toutes les faveurs dont sa bonté nous comble journellement.

to Fall on *slaughter* *field* *victory*
to Gain *to Praise*
with *for*
which *to Bestow upon.*

These words s'en prendre à, or au, à la, &c. may be expressed by either to lay the fault upon, or to impute it to, used in the proper Tense, Person, and Number;

A
T H Ê M E.

Les malheureux qui se sont attirés leur infortune, par
une mauvaise conduite, ont tort de s'en prendre aux
astres. Hobbes, le plus grand génie de l'Angleterre depuis
Bacon, ne sauroit souffrir qu'Aristote ait tant de crédit dans
la théologie; et il s'en prend aux divisions de l'église. On
ne doit pas toujours s'en prendre aux maîtres, si leurs
élèves ne font point également des progrès dans les sciences.

to Bring upon one's self
to Be in the wrong
star *since*
to Bear *Aristotle*
divinity, *church*
always
pupil *equally*

The word tout prefixed to an Adjective, followed by que, may be rendered by although or though; Exam. Tout malade qu'il est, il peut, &c. that is to say, quoiqu'il soit malade, though he is sick, he can, &c. or else it may be expressed by the Conjunctive particle, as, either repeated with an Adjective, or only placed after it; viz. As sick as he is, he can, &c. and without the first Particle, Sick as he is, &c.

A

T H E M E.

Tout convaincus ^{convinced} que nous sommes de la vanité des biens ^{goods} de la terre, nous ne laissons pas que de les rechercher. La vertu tout austère et toute rigide qu'elle est | fait goûter | ^{to Seek after} de véritables plaisirs. Il n'y a point d'ouvrage, tout accompli qu'il soit, qui ne fondît au milieu de la critique, si son ^{to Procure} Auteur vouloit en croire tous les Censeurs, qui en ôtent ^{pleasure} chacun l'endroit qui leur déplaît. ^{work} ^{per-} ^{to Fall to pieces} ^{criticism,} ^{to Believe} ^{to Strike out}

part

What is, moreover, worth observing on the word tout is, that it is, in this acceptance, invariable, if placed immediately before an Adjective feminine, beginning with a vowel; and yet, before an Adjective feminine, beginning with a Consonant, it must agree, with it in Gender and Number, therefore; we should always write elle est tout aimable, elles sont tout aimables; and elle est toute furieuse, elles sont toutes furieuses; no other reason, but custom, can be assigned for this difference.—There are many other Idioms and Gallicisms which I shall omit inserting, lest I should swell this Book too much; the foregoing terms and expressions being sufficient to shew the genius of the French Language: others may be discovered, either by conversing with learned men, or by reading good books.

INTRODUCTION INTRODUCTION

A L A

T O

Versification Française.

French Versification.

LA versification Française est l'art de faire des vers, suivant certaines règles. Les règles, qu'on en va donner, regardent premièrement ce qui fait la forme mécanique du vers; secondement ce qui en constitue la forme intérieure.

Il n'y a rien en soi-même de plus aisé, que ce qui fait la forme mécanique des vers François. La *Cesure*, qui ne regarde que les vers héroïques, et les vers de cinq piés, est une bagatelle; et le partage des hémistiches, dans quoi elle consiste, ne renferme aucune difficulté. La *Rime* est presque la seule qu'y reconnoissent, non

FRENCH versification is the art of making verses, according to some stated rules. The rules, which can be laid down, relate first to that which composes the mechanical form of a verse, and secondly that which constitutes its interior form*.

Nothing is of itself more easy, than that which composes the mechanical form of French verses. The *Cesura*, which respects only heroic verses, and verses of five feet, is of a trifling nature; and the division of hemisticks or half-verses, wherein it consists, is not attended with the least difficulty. Rhyme is almost the only one which a great

* Besides those Rules, which are here alluded to, there are also general Principles to be observed in French Poetry, as well as in that of other Languages; viz. A just dependance of one verse upon the other; a flowing and harmonious style; implying the characteristic each kind of subject requires; as Simplicity in *Pastoral*, Tenderness in *Elegy*, Sharpness in *Satire*; Sweetness in *Lyric*, and Gravity in *Heroic* verses; &c.

seulement bien des Lecteurs, mais même bien des Poètes. A l'égard de la forme intérieure du vers, la différence qu'il y a entre la Prose et les Vers, se réduit à celle qu'y peuvent mettre les *Transpositions*, et les *Licences*.

number of Readers, and even Poets, acknowledge to be in it. With respect to the interior form of verse, the difference betwixt Prose and Verse is reduced to that which the Transpositions and Licences, used therein, may occasion.

On distingue ordinairement cinq sortes de vers François, par le nombre des syllabes qui entrent dans leur composition.

We generally admit of five sorts of French Verses, which are distinguished, from each other, by the number of syllables that compose them.

1°. Ceux de douze syllabes, qu'on appelle *Alexandrins*, héroïques, ou grands vers; Exem.

1. Those of twelve syllables, which are called Alexandrines, heroic, or grand verse; Exam.*

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Pré-ve-nez les be-soins d'un a-mi mal-heu-reux,
Sans pro-di-ga-li-té ren-dez vous gé-né-reux.

2°. Ceux de dix syllabes; qu'on apelloit autrefois *Vers communs*, parce qu'on en faisoit un usage fort fréquent; Exem.

2. Those of ten syllables; which were formerly called common verses, on account of their being frequently made use of; Exam.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
Si vous vou-lez goû-ter les vrais plai-firs,
Ne don-nez pas l'es-sort à vos dé-firs.

3°. Ceux de huit syllabes; qu'on emploie assez souvent

3. Those of eight syllables; which are very often intro-

* These verses are so called, as some Writers assert, on account of being first used by an old French Poet named *Alexander*; but others attribute it to an ancient favorite Poem on *Alexander the Great*.

dans les Epitres, l'Ode, les *duced into Epistles, Odes,*
Chansons, &c. Exem. *Songs, &c. Exam.*

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ ⁸
Le mo-ment pas-sé n'est plus rien,
L'avenir peut ne jamais être*,
Le présent est l'unique bien,
Dont l'homme soit vraiment le maître.

4°. Ceux de la quatrième *4. Those of the fourth sort*
espèce ont sept syllabes, et *consist of seven syllables, and*
on les emploie dans toutes *are used, for any subject*
sortes de style; Exem. *whatsoever; Exam.*

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷
Ne pre-nez point pour ver-tu
Les noirs accès de tristesse,
D'un Loup-garou revêtu
Des habits de la sagesse.

5°. Enfin, nos plus petits *5. Lastly, our shortest*
vers, du moins générale- *verses, as they are generally*
ment reçus, sont ceux de *considered, are those of six syl-*
six syllabes; Exem. *lables; Exam.*

¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶
Ve-nez pe-tits oi-seaux,
Sous ces tendres feuillages,
Au murmure des eaux,
Accorder vos ramages.

Les vers qui ont moins *Verses that contain less than*
de six syllabes ne sont guè- *six syllables are seldom used,*
re d'usage que pour la Poë- *except for lyric Poetry, and*
sie lyrique, et quelques pe- *some small humorous pieces,*
tites pièces badines. *wherein they are introduced.*

* By attending to the Number of syllables in the second and fourth Verses of this and the following Stanzas, there will be found nine instead of eight; as they end with an *e mute*; see ART. II. p. 159.

ART. I.

DE LA CESURE.

LA Césure est un repos qui coupe le vers en deux parties, dont chacune s'appelle *Hémistiche*, c'est-à-dire, *Demi-vers*. Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient ce repos; il doit être à la sixième dans les vers de douze syllabes, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix; Exem.

Vains fantômes d'honneur—c'est pour toi qu'un héros,
Immole chaque jour—sa vie et son repos.

Veiller, prévoir—agir avec constance,
Sur nous du ciel—attire l'assistance.

Le premier *Hémistiche* des vers héroïques peut avoir sept syllabes, pourvu qu'il finisse par un *e* muet, et que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle; Exem.

ART. I.

Of the CESURA.

THE *Cesura* is a pause which divides the verse into two equal parts, to which the name of *Hemistick* is given, that is, *Half a verse*. None but verses of twelve and ten syllables have this kind of pause, it should be at the sixth in verses of twelve syllables, and at the fourth in those of ten syllables*; Exem.

The first *Hemistick* of heroic verses, may contain seven syllables, provided the last of them end with an *e* mute, and the following word begins with a vowel; Exem.

Manquer à sa parole; et trahir sa promesse,
C'est une fourberie, ou c'est une foiblesse.

Mais la Césure ne vaut rien, et par conséquent le

But the Cesura is wrong, and the verse consequently de-

* This part of the French versification was formerly liable to many variations and irregularities, which are totally abolished; no other kind of Verses but these two, being now allowed to have it; the others not being judged long enough to require a rest or station in the middle.

vers est défectueux, si le sens de la Phrase en est interrompu; ainsi les Vers suivans ne sont pas réguliers; viz.

fective, if the sense of the Phrase is thereby interrupted; therefore the following verses are not proper; viz.*

Tâchez toujours de vous—rendre aimable et poli:

Fuyez les vices qui—vous feront mépriser.

Vous devez vaincre le—penchant qui vous entraîne.

Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'e muet ne peut être suivi d'un autre mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une h muette, comme dans les Vers suivans; viz.

A word that is terminated by any other vowel than the e mute, cannot, with propriety, be followed by another word that likewise begins with a vowel or h mute, as in the two following Verses; viz.

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs.

Evitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

Les Phrases précédentes ne peuvent donc point former des vers; car, dans les premières, la Césure n'est pas bonne; parce que le sens exige que le mot *vous*, et celui qui le suit (*rendre*) soient prononcés tout de suite et sans repos: dans les dernières, la rencontre des voyelles est trop désagréable à l'oreille pour la Poësie.

The foregoing Phrases cannot therefore form verses; for in the two first, the Césura is not proper; because the sense requires that the word vous, and that which follows it (rendre) be pronounced all together, and without a pause or rest: in the two last, the clashing of two vowels is too disagreeable to the ear to be admitted in Poetry.

* The separating of the following words must also be avoided in the Césura; viz. The Adjective before its Substantive; the Pronoun which is either the Subject or Object of the Verb; the Auxiliary Verbs from the Participle preterite; the Negative Particles from the Verb; &c.

ART. II.

DE LA RIME.

LA Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers. On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine, et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui terminent par un *e* muet, soit seul, soit suivi d'un *s* ou de *nt*; Exem.

Toute chose fixe et durable,
A ce qui passe est préférable.

Regardons les malheurs des autres,
Et nous nous plaindrons moins des nôtres.

La terminaison *ent*, de la troisième Personne, du Pluriel, de nos Verbes seulement, forme aussi une Rime féminine, parce que cette syllabe a le son de l'*e* muet; mais l'*ent* des autres Parties d'oraison, et l'*oient*, dans les Imparfais, sont des Rimes masculines, parce que ces syllabes produisent un son distinct; Exem.

La campagne a perdu les fleurs qui l'embellissent,
Les oiseaux ne font plus d'agréables concerts,
Les bois sont dépouillés de leurs feuillages verts,
N'est-il point encor tems que mes plaintes finissent.

La Rime Masculine est celle qui se termine par une

ART. II.

Of RHYME.

RHYME is the agreement of two sounds that terminate two verses: we admit of two sorts of rhyme, the feminine and masculine. The former belongs to those verses that end with a mute *e*, whether it be single, or with an *s*, or *nt*; Exam.

The termination *ent*, of the third Person, of the Plural number, of our Verbs only, likewise forms a feminine Rhyme, because this syllable has the sound of the mute *e*; but the *ent* of other Parts of speech, and the *oient*, in the Imperfect tenses, belong to the masculine Rhyme, because these syllables produce a distinct sound; Exam.

The masculine Rhyme is that which ends with any other let-

autre lettre que l'*e* muet, soit *ter than the e mute, whether*
 seul, soit suivi d'une *s* ou *it be single, or connected with*
 de *nt*; Exem. *an s or nt*; Exam.

Les qualités du cœur, l'exacte probité.
 Sont l'ame et le bien de la société.

Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir,
 Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

Les deux hémistiches d'un *The two hemisticks of a*
 vers ne doivent pas avoir *verse should not have the same*
 une convenance de sons, ni *sounds, neither ought the last*
 le dernier hémistiche d'un *hemistick of a verse to rhyme*
 vers ne doit pas non plus *with the first of the preceding*
 rimer avec le premier du *verse, or of the following;*
 vers précédent, ou du vers *therefore, the subsequent Ver-*
 suivant; Exem. *ses are improper; viz.*

Si tu veux demain te lever de matin.
 Il ne tiendra qu'à toi de partir avec moi.

Il faut pour les avoir, employer tous ses soins,
 Ils sont à moi du moins, tout autant qu'à mon frère.

Il faut observer que la *It must be observed, that*
 convenance de sons et d'or- *the affinity of sounds and*
 thographe ne peut autoriser *spelling cannot authorize the*
 la rime d'un mot avec lui *rhyming of a word with it-*
 même, ni d'un simple avec *self, nor of a compound word*
 son composé, comme dire *with its primitive, as dire*
 avec contredire; mais deux *with contredire; but two*
 mots entièrement semblables, *words although entirely alike,*
 par le son et l'orthographe, *both in sound and spelling, as*
 comme livre (volume) avec *livre (a book) with livre (a*
 livre (poids) riment assez *pound) rhyme tolerably well*
 bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont *together, when they have dif-*
 des significations différentes. *ferent significations.*

ART. III.

Des Transpositions.

CE que j'entends par Transposition est, lorsque l'ordre de la Phrase est renversé, et qu'un Substantif, ou un Verbe qui dépend d'un autre, passe devant celui de qui il dépend, et qui le gouverne; Exem.

C'est Dieu qui du néant a tiré l'Univers;
C'est lui qui sur la terre a répandu les mers.

Un vieillard vénérable avoit loin de la Cour
Cherché la douce paix, dans un obscur séjour.

Car en Prose nous dirions, *c'est Dieu qui a tiré l'Univers du néant; c'est lui qui a répandu les Mers sur la terre; un vieillard vénérable avoit cherché, &c.*

Lorsque les transpositions n'embarassent pas le sens de la Phrase, elles donnent de la grâce et de la noblesse à la Poésie; mais comme notre Langue a ses usages, elle rejete celles qui rendent le

ART. III.

Of Transpositions.

WHAT I mean by Transposition is, when the order of the Phrase is perverted, and when a Substantive, or Verb that depends on another, goes before that on which it depends, and which governs it; Exam.

For we would say in Prose, *c'est Dieu qui a tiré l'Univers du néant; c'est lui qui a répandu les Mers sur la terre; un vieillard vénérable avoit cherché, &c.*

When transpositions do not perplex the sense of the Phrase, they add grace and excellence to Poetry*; but as our Language has its peculiar customs, it rejects such as render the verse rough, or obscure

* These advantages have induced some Writers to assert that Transposition was the chief characteristic of French Poetry, but it is not so; for we have many excellent poetical productions without its assistance.

vers dur, ou obscurcissent la pensée; un exemple tiré des Poësies du feu *Abbé Régnier Desmarais* rendra cette observation plus sensible.

the sentiment; an example quoted from the Poems of the late Abbé Régnier Desmarais, will make this observation more intelligible.*

Philis fait manier et la laine et la soie,
Et c'est avec tant d'art que sa main les emploie,
Qu'on diroit qu'à l'ouvrage *elle-même* autrefois
Minerve ait pris plaisir de lui former les doigts.

Dans le troisième de ces vers, le terme *elle-même* rend la pensée équivoque, et l'on ne découvre point son rapport, jusqu'à ce qu'on soit venu au nom de *Minerve*. On peut s'imaginer que c'est de *Philis* dont on veut parler. Voici, ce me semble, comme on pourroit réformer ces deux derniers vers.

In the third of these verses, the term elle-même renders the sentiment obscure and equivocal; and we do not discover its relation, till we come to the word Minerve. One may as well imagine that Phillis is the object which is intended to be spoken of. I think we may amend these two last verses in this manner; viz.

Qu'on diroit que Minerve *elle-même* autrefois
A l'ouvrage ait pris soin de lui former les doigts.

Dans ce cas-ci, il n'y a plus d'ambiguïté dans le vers; et cette construction est suivant l'usage de notre langue, qui requière que le Pronom *lui-même, elle-même, soi-même, &c.* se rapporte toujours au Substantif précédent le plus prochain, avec lequel il peut s'accorder.

In this case, there is no longer any ambiguity in the verse, and this construction is agreeable to the usage of our language, which requires that the Pronoun lui-même, elle-même, soi-même, &c. should always answer to the preceding Substantive, with which it can agree.

* A celebrated Writer and Academician in the reign of Lewis XIV.

ART. IV.
DES LICENCES.

LES Licences poétiques consistent dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes, dont la Prose n'oseroit se servir; et dans le retranchement d'une lettre, selon le besoin que les Poètes en ont.

Quoique la Poésie se serve, en général, des mêmes mots que la Prose; cependant il y a des expressions que les Poètes emploient heureusement, qui ne plairoient pas dans la prose. Telles sont *humains & mortels pour hommes—coursier pour cheval—glaive pour épée—ondes pour eaux; &c. Exem.*

Les œuvres des *humains* sont fragiles comme eux,
Dieu dissipe à son gré leurs desseins orgueilleux.

Plus sage en mon respect, que ces hardis *mortels*
Qui d'un indigne encens profanent tes autels.

On fait cas d'un *coursier* qui fier et plein de cœur,
Fait paroître en courant sa bouillante vigueur.

Ils s'attaquent cent fois, et cent fois se repoussent,
Leur courage s'augmente, et leurs *glaives* s'émoussent.

En lisant avec attention
les bons Poètes, on trouve-

ART. IV.
Of LICENCES.

POETICAL Licences consist in making use of divers terms, which Prose would not presume to employ; and in the cutting off a letter, according to the necessity Poets are under of so doing.

Although Poetry makes use, in general, of the same words as Prose, there are nevertheless some expressions which Poets employ to a great advantage, and that would be displeasing in prose. Such are *humains & mortels for hommes—coursier for cheval—glaive for épée—ondes for eaux; &c. Exam.*

In reading elegant Poets
with attention, we shall find

ra bien d'autres expressions propres au stile poétique seulement.

Nous écrivons en prose *je crois, je fais, je prévois, &c.* les Poètes selon le besoin emploient ou retranchent l's dans ces mots; Exem.

many other expressions that are peculiar to the poetical style only.

We write, in prose, je crois, je fais, je prévois, &c. Poets, as they see occasion, either use or reject the s in these words; Exam.*

Je le fais, et malgré les maux que je prévoi
Un desir curieux m'entraîne loin de moi.

Ils écrivent de même *jusque* ou *jusques*; *encore* ou *encor*; *guère*, *guères*, ou *n'aguères*. Ils emploient aussi *alors que* pour *lorsque*—*cependant que* pour *pendant que*—*dessus & dessous* pour *sur & sous*; &c. cependant les bons Poètes se servent rarement de ces Licences, et ceux qui s'appliquent à la Poésie ne doivent pas oublier ce précept de Boileau :

They write in like manner jusque or jusques; encore or encor; guère, guères, or n'aguères. They likewise make use of alors que for lorsque—cependant que for pendant que—dessus and dessous for sur and sous; &c. however, good Poets seldom take these liberties, and such as apply themselves to Poetry should not be unmindful of this precept of Boileau :

Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,
Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux;
Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,
Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.
Sans la langue, en un mot, l'Auteur le plus divin,
Est toujours, quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

* This poetical Licence of cutting off the s, can only be adopted for the first Person in the Present Tense of very few French Verbs; for, it cannot be practised with respect to the second Person therefore, it would be very improper to write *tu crois, tu jais, tu prévoi*, and the like.

ART. V.

De l'Arrangement des
Vers.

DANS les différentes manières dont les vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la Rime, et le nombre des syllabes. Quant au nombre des syllabes, il est arbitraire dans les pièces libres, et dans la Poësie lyrique; mais il est déterminé dans les pièces sérieuses et les grands poëmes, qui sont écrits en vers de douze syllabes, comme le poëme Epique, le Dramatique, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satire, et l'Epitre. A l'égard de la Rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins, comme les suivants:

Dès la pointe du jour au bord de ces ruisseaux,
J'accorde mes chansons à celles des oiseaux;
Je parle des beautés de celle que j'adore,
Je parle de l'ardeur du feu qui me dévore.

Ou bien deux vers féminins peuvent être suivis de deux masculins, qu'on peut continuer ainsi, jusqu'à la fin, comme dans cet Exem.

ART. V.

*Of the Arrangement of
Verses.*

IN the different orders wherein verses must be disposed, we should consider the Rhyme, and the number of syllables. With respect to the number of syllables they are composed of, that is quite arbitrary in loose pieces and lyric Poetry; but is limited in other pieces of a serious nature, and in lofty poems, that are always composed in verses of twelve syllables; such as the Epic poem, the Dramatic poem, the Eclogue, the Elegy, the Satire, and the Epistle. With regard to the Rhyme, two masculine verses may be followed by two feminine, as they are in the next:

Or else two feminine verses may be followed by two masculine ones, which may be continued so, to the end of the Poem, as in this Example;

Qu'heureux étoit le siècle où parmi l'innocence,
L'amour sans tyrannie exerçoit sa puissance;
Quand de Ciel libéral verfoit à pleines mains,
Tout ce dont l'abondance affouvit les Humains.

On peut aussi les arranger de manière qu'un vers masculin suive un ou deux féminins, ou qu'un vers féminin suive un ou deux masculins*; Exem.

We may also dispose them so that one masculine verse shall follow one or two feminines, or that one feminine verse will come in after one or two masculines; Exam.

Damon, dans tout ce qu'on nomme
Vulgairement un malheur,
On s'abuse, il n'est pour l'homme
De vrai mal que la douleur.
L'exile, l'obscur naissance,
La servile dépendance,
Le mépris, l'oppression,
La pauvreté qu'on déteste,
Le trépas, et tout le reste,
Sont des maux d'opinion.

Les vers disposés en rimes croisées, comme les quatre premiers, peuvent être aussi composés de différentes syllabes; Exem.

Verses that are disposed in cross-rhymes, like the four first, may also be of different sorts; as in the following Example:

On me le dit du matin jusqu'au soir;
Il est bien glorieux dans l'âge le plus tendre,
D'apprendre et de savoir;
Mais pour savoir, il faut apprendre.

Ces vers sont d'usage pour le Sonnet, l'Epigramme, les Fables, les Chançons, &c.

These verses are generally used for the Sonnet, the Epigram, the Fables, Songs, &c.

* But, neither two masculine Verses, nor two feminine Verses can with propriety be put together, when they rhyme differently.

On peut mettre plus de deux vers ayant la même rime, mais il ne faut pas qu'ils soient tous de suite ; on doit les arranger comme dans le morceau suivant.

We may introduce, in that kind of Poetry, more than two verses with the same rhyme, but they must not follow each other; they are to be disposed after the following manner :

Exemple de l'Europe, ô Londres, heureuse terre,
Ainsi que vos tyrans, vous avez su chasser
Les préjugés honteux qui nous livrent la guerre.
C'est-là qu'on fait tout dire, & tout récompenser :
Nul art n'est méprisé, tout succès a sa gloire ;
Le vainqueur de Tallard, le fils de la victoire,
Le sublime Dryden, & le sage Addison,
Et la charmante Oldfield *, & l'immortel Newton,
Ont part également au temple de mémoire ;
Et *Lecouvreur* † à Londres auroit eu des tombeaux
Parmi les beaux esprits, les Rois & les Héros.

Voici en quoi consistent les règles générales qu'il y a à observer à l'égard de notre Poësie ; ainsi, comme il n'en faut point davantage pour mon dessein, je renvoie ceux qui veulent de plus longs éclaircissemens, à *l'Abregé des Règles de la Versification françoise, par M. Restaut*, qui est annexé à sa Grammaire ; et à *l'Art poétique de Boileau* ; où ces principes sont plus détaillés.

Herein consist the general rules that are to be observed with respect to French Poetry ; and, as there is no necessity for any more, at present, to answer my design, I refer such as desire longer discussions, on this subject, to the Abregé des Règles de la Versification françoise, by Mr. Restaut, which is annexed to his French Grammar ; and Boileau's Art of Poetry ; wherein these principles are displayed more at large.

* A capital English Actress.

† A famous French Actress.

Néanmoins, comme il me semble qu'une courte énumération des plus excellens ouvrages François dans les divers genres de Poësies, pourra être utile aux Amateurs de notre Langue, je conclurai cette Dissertation par leur indiquer le choix qu'ils en doivent faire, savoir ;

Nevertheless, as I conceive that a succinct enumeration of the most celebrated French productions, in the various kinds of Poetry, may be useful to the Learners of our Language, I will conclude this Dissertation by informing them of those to which they are to give the preference ; viz.

POESIES EPIQUES—La *Henriade* de M. De Voltaire, avec des Remarques critiques ; imprimée à Londres, en 1 Vol. in 8vo. La *Colombiade* de Madame Du Bocage.

POESIES TRAGIQUES—Les Tragédies de P. Corneille, avec le Commentaire de M. De Voltaire ; celles de J. Racine, avec le Commentaire de Luneau de Boisgermain.

POESIES COMIQUES—Les Comédies de Molière dont la meilleure édition est celle de Paris, en 8 Vol. in 12. Celles de J. F. Regnard ; et celles de P. N. Desfouches.

POESIES LYRIQUES—Les Œuvres de Malherbe, avec les Remarques de Ménage ; celles de Jean-Baptiste Rousseau ; et celles de l'Abbé Sabbatier.

POESIES ELEGIAQUES—Les Elégies de M^{de}. la Comtesse De la Suze ; le Recueil des Poësies de M^{de}. et M^{lle}. Desboulrières ; quoique les Poësies de celle-ci n'aient pas le mérite de celles de sa Mère ; dont les Elégies et les Idilles peuvent servir de Modèles.

POESIES SATYRIQUES—Les Satyres de Mathurin Régnier, dont la meilleure édition est celle de Londres, en 1 Vol. in 4°, avec les Remarques de M. Brossette ; et la *Dunciade* de Palissot, à l'imitation de celle de Pope.

POESIES EPIGRAMMATIQUES—L'Anatologie Françoisé, ou Recueil d'Epigrammes et de Madrigaux; depuis Marot jusqu'à présent; Paris, en 1769.

POESIES DIDACTIQUES—L'Art poétique, le Lutrin, et les Epitres de Boileau Despréaux; les Saisons de St. Lambert; et la Déclamation Théâtrale de Dorat.

POESIES d'OPERA—Les Opéra de Phil. Quinault; dont les principaux sont, *Les Fêtes de l'Amour et de Bacchus*; *Psiché*; *la Mascarade du Carnaval*; *Thésée*; *Proserpine*; *Roland*; *le Temple de la Paix*; *Arminde*; et ceux-ci d'Houdar de La Motte; viz. *L'Europe galante*; *le Carnaval et la Folie*; *l'Amadis de Grèce*; *Omphale*; et *Isé*; toutes Pièces fort estimées, surtout la dernière:

Nous avons encore un grand nombre d'autres productions poétiques, dont le mérite est connu de ceux qui sont versés dans notre Langue, et qui ont du goût pour la Poësie; comme,

We have moreover a great many other poetical compositions, which are very well known and admired by those who are versed in our Language, and take a delight in reading Poetry; such as,

Les Fables de *La Fontaine*; le Virgile travesti de *Scarron*; le Voyage de Bachaumont de *Chapelle*; le Mercure Galant de *Boursault*; les Héroïdes de *Colardeau*; les Poësies de l'Abbé de *Chaulieu*; le Vert-vert de *Gresset*; les Eglogues de *Ségrais*; les Quatre Parties du Jour du Cardinal de *Bernis*;

Et plusieurs autres, que les bornes que je me suis prescrites, dans ce petit Recueil, ne me permettent pas de citer à présent.

And many others, which the limits I have confined myself to, in this small Collection, do not allow me to enumerate at present.

F I N I S.

BOOKS *published by the same* AUTHOR,

And printed for G. G. J. and J. ROBINSON, in Paternoster-Row; and F. WINGRAVE, Successor to Mr. Nourse, in the Strand.

- I. SYLLABAIRES FRANÇOIS, or a French Spelling-Book, calculated to lead young Beginners, with Ease, from the Knowledge of single Letters to the Reading of the longest and most difficult Polysyllables; to which is annexed an Introduction to French Grammar, a Vocabulary, &c. The whole in French and English; 7th Edition.—*Price* 1s. 6d.
- II. ANALYSE DES SONS, &c. or Principles of the French Pronunciation and Orthography, in which all the single and combined Sounds of the French Language are described and alphabetically exhibited in French and English, with useful Notes, and Observations extracted out of the best French Authors and Grammarians; 3d Edition.—*Price* 1s.
- III. THE PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR, containing all that is necessary to be learned to acquire a thorough Knowledge of the constituent Principles of that Language; comprised in a rational and clear Method; 7th Edition.—*Price* 2s. 6d.
- IV. MODELS of LETTERS, in French and English, designed for the Instruction and Improvement of those who are particularly desirous of acquiring the true Style, and exact Manner of French epistolary Correspondence; 3d Edition.—*Price* 4s.
- V. THE RUDIMENTS of the Italian Language, wherein the Parts, that are requisite for Beginners, are regularly displayed, and illustrated with Remarks, and a Variety of useful Tables, &c. to expedite the Progress of those who attempt to learn this Language, without the Assistance of a Master.—*Price* 4s.

